Glycoscience
Epimerisation, Isomerisation and Rearrangement Reactions of Carbohydrates
215

Topics in Current Chemistry

Editorial Board:
A. de Meijere • K. N. Houk • H. Kessler
J.-M. Lehn • S. V. Ley • S. L. Schreiber • J. Thiem
B. M. Trost • F. Vögtle • H. Yamamoto
Glycoscience

Epimerisation, Isomerisation and Rearrangement Reactions of Carbohydrates

Volume Editor: Arnold E. Stütz

With contributions by
M. Albert, S. J. Angyal, K. Dax, B. Eder, M. H. Fechter,
R. J. Ferrier, H. Häusler, Z. Hricovíniová, I. Lundt,
R. Madsen, S. Osanai, L. Petruš, M. Petrušová,
A. de Raadt, A. E. Stütz, J. Thiem, B. Werschkun,
T. M. Wrodnigg

Springer
The series Topics in Current Chemistry presents critical reviews of the present and future trends in modern chemical research. The scope of coverage includes all areas of chemical science including the interfaces with related disciplines such as biology, medicine and materials science. The goal of each thematic volume is to give the non-specialist reader, whether at the university or in industry, a comprehensive overview of an area where new insights are emerging that are of interest to a larger scientific audience.

As a rule, contributions are specially commissioned. The editors and publishers will, however, always be pleased to receive suggestions and supplementary information. Papers are accepted for Topics in Current Chemistry in English.

In references Topics in Current Chemistry is abbreviated Top. Curr. Chem. and is cited as a journal.

Springer WWW home page: http://www.springer.de
Visit the TCC home page at http://link.springer.de/series/tcc/
or http://link.springer-ny.com/series/tcc/

ISSN 0340-1022
ISBN 3-540-41383-9
Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 74-644622

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilm or in any other ways, and storage in data banks. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is only permitted under the provisions of the German Copyright Law of September 9, 1965, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer-Verlag. Violations are liable for prosecution under the German Copyright Law.

Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York
a member of BertelsmannSpringer Science+Business Media GmbH

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2001
Printed in Germany

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

Cover design: Friedhelm Steinen-Broo, Barcelona; MEDIO, Berlin
Typesetting: Fotosatz-Service Köhler GmbH, 97084 Würzburg

SPIN: 10753427    02/3020 ra – 5 4 3 2 1 0 – Printed on acid-free paper
Volume Editor

Prof. Dr. Arnold E. Stütz
Institut für Organische Chemie
Technische Universität Graz
Stremayrgasse 16
8010 Graz, Austria
E-mail: stuetz@orgc.tu-graz.ac.at

Editorial Board

Prof. Dr. Armin de Meijere
Institut für Organische Chemie
der Georg-August-Universität
Tammanistraße 2
37077 Göttingen, Germany
E-mail: ameijer1@uni-goettingen.de

Prof. Dr. Horst Kessler
Institut für Organische Chemie
TU München
Lichtenbergstraße 4
85747 Garching, Germany
E-mail: kessler@ch.tum.de

Prof. Steven V. Ley
University Chemical Laboratory
Lensfield Road
Cambridge CB2 1EW, Great Britain
E-mail: svl1000@cus.cam.ac.uk

Prof. Dr. Joachim Thiem
Institut für Organische Chemie
Universität Hamburg
Martin-Luther-King-Platz 6
20146 Hamburg, Germany
E-mail: thiem@chemie.uni-hamburg.de

Prof. Dr. Fritz Vögtle
Kekulé-Institut für Organische Chemie
und Biochemie der Universität Bonn
Gerhard-Domagk-Straße 1
53121 Bonn, Germany
E-mail: voegtle@uni-bonn.de

Prof. K.N. Houk
Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry
University of California
405 Hilgard Avenue
Los Angeles, CA 90024-1589, USA
E-mail: houk@chem.ucla.edu

Prof. Jean-Marie Lehn
Institut de Chimie
Université de Strasbourg
1 rue Blaise Pascal, B.P.Z 296/R8
67008 Strasbourg Cedex, France
E-mail: lehn@chimie.u-strasbg.fr

Prof. Stuart L. Schreiber
Chemical Laboratories
Harvard University
12 Oxford Street
Cambridge, MA 02138-2902, USA
E-mail: sls@slsiris.harvard.edu

Prof. Barry M. Trost
Department of Chemistry
Stanford University
Stanford, CA 94305-5080, USA
E-mail: bmtrost@leland.stanford.edu

Prof. Hisashi Yamamoto
School of Engineering
Nagoya University
Chikusa, Nagoya 464-01, Japan
E-mail: j45988a@nucc.cc.nagoya-u.ac.jp
For all customers with a standing order for Topics in Current Chemistry we offer the electronic form via LINK free of charge. Please contact your librarian who can receive a password for free access to the full articles by registration at:

http://link.springer.de/orders/index.htm

If you do not have a standing order you can nevertheless browse through the table of contents of the volumes and the abstracts of each article at:

http://link.springer.de/series/tcc

There you will also find information about the

- Editorial Board
- Aims and Scope
- Instructions for Authors
Carbohydrate chemistry is a rapidly growing research and development area with great potential for future achievements due to the eminent importance of carbohydrates in biochemistry and biology and the strong impact of glyco-sciences in these fields. One of the most important methods of carbohydrate transformation in terms of commercial significance is the conversion of sugars into high-added-value epimers or isomers such as the enzymatic transformation of D-glucose into D-fructose or the base induced isomerisation of lactose into lactulose. In addition to these industrial processes, quite a range of methods has become available to transform simple sugars into valuable intermediates, building blocks and sophisticated products. Consequently, a compilation of important but quite diverse methods in one book appeared to be a worthwhile task. Quite a few of the authors have made significant discoveries in the area under consideration. Others have contributed important and innovative extensions taking one or the other method to even higher levels of sophistication.

The classical method of epimerisation, the Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement has been treated by S. Angyal, the expert in the field of free sugars and their interconversions. L. Petruš and co-authors have contributed a first-hand experience based chapter on the Bílik reaction, which was discovered in Bratislava and is an important approach to rare sugars on a commercial basis. Another, more recently developed method, the epimerisation of free sugars catalysed by nickel (II)/ethylene diamine complexes, has been reviewed by S. Osanai.

Robin Ferrier, the discoverer of the allylic rearrangement of glycals (generally known in organic chemistry as the “Ferrier I” reaction) as well as of the transformation of hex-5-enopyranosides to highly functionalised cyclohexanones (coined “Ferrier II” reaction) has provided accounts on these milestones of carbohydrate chemistry. A chapter on base-catalysed transformations of aldonolactones has been provided by I. Lundt, the leading expert in this area, in collaboration with R. Madsen and an account on Claisen rearrangement reactions in carbohydrate chemistry has been contributed by B. Werschkun and J. Thiem.

From the Graz groups, K. Dax and M. Albert have gone through the efforts to categorise rearrangements occurring during (attempted) nucleophilic displacement reactions at various ring positions in monosaccharides. T. Wrodnigg and B. Eder have reviewed the Amadori and Heyns rearrangements. In addition, a contribution on D-xylene isomerases and related, preparatively useful enzymes
some of which have been used in this laboratory has also been included. A short section on reactions related to the general topic under consideration but not treated in the other chapters in this book has been compiled by A. de Raadt and M. H. Fechter.

We all hope that you, the readers, will find this collection interesting to read and a useful source of information for further studies and rewarding applications.

Graz, January 2001

Arnold E. Stütz
Contents

The Lobry de Bruyn-Alberda van Ekenstein Transformation and Related Reactions
S. J. Angyal .......................................................... 1

The Blik Reaction
L. Petruš, M. Petrušová, Z. Hricovíniová ........................................ 15

Nickel (II) Catalyzed Rearrangements of Free Sugars
S. Osanai .............................................................. 43

d-Xylose (d-Glucose) Isomerase and Related Enzymes in Carbohydrate Synthesis
H. Häusler, A.E. Stütz .................................................. 77

The Amadori and Heyns Rearrangements: Landmarks in the History of Carbohydrate Chemistry or Unrecognized Synthetic Opportunities?
T. M. Wrodnigg, B. Eder .................................................. 115

Substitution-with-Allylic-Rearrangement Reactions of Glycal Derivatives
R. J. Ferrier .............................................................. 153

Synthetically Useful Base Induced Rearrangements of Aldonolactones
I. Lundt, R. Madsen ..................................................... 177

Rearrangements in the Course of Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions
K. Dax, M. Albert ......................................................... 193

Direct Conversion of 5,6- Unsaturated Hexopyranosyl Compounds to Functionalized Cyclohexanones
R. J. Ferrier .............................................................. 277

Claisen Rearrangements in Carbohydrate Chemistry
B. Werschkun, J. Thiem .................................................. 293

Miscellaneous
A. de Raadt, M. H. Fechter ............................................ 327

Author Index Volumes 201–215 ............................................. 347
Contents of Volume 186

Glycoscience

Synthesis of Oligosaccharides and Glycoconjugates

Volume Editors: H. Driguez, J. Thiem
ISBN 3-540-62033-8

Synthesis and Modification of Carbohydrates Using Glycosidases and Lipases
A. Fernández-Mayoralas

Chemical Transformations Employing Glycosyltransferases
U. Gambert, J. Thiem

Enzymatic and Chemical Glycosylations of Ergot Alkaloids
and Biological Aspects of New Compounds
U. Křen

Enzymatic Synthesis of Peptide Conjugates –
Tools for the Study of Biological Signal Transduction
B. Sauerbrei, T. Kappes, H. Waldmann

Tandem Asymmetric C-C Bond Formations by Enzyme Catalysis
M. Petersen, M. T. Zannetti, W.-D. Fessner

The Synthesis of Novel Sialic Acids as Biological Probes
M. von Itzstein, R.J. Thomson

Synthesis of Oligosaccharides of Bacterial Origin Containing Heptoses,
Uronic Acids and Fructofuranoses as Synthetic Challenges
S. Oscarson

Pyruvated Saccharides – Novel Strategies for Oligosaccharide Synthesis
T. Ziegler
Contents of Volume 187

Glycoscience

Synthesis of Substrate Analogs and Mimetics

Volume Editors: H. Driguez, J. Thiem
ISBN 3-540-62032-X

Nucleophilic C-Glycosyl Donors for C-Glycoside Synthesis
J.-M. Beau, T. Gallagher

Synthesis of C-Glycosides of Biological Interest
F. Nicotra

Thiooligosaccharides in Glycobiology
H. Driguez

Aldonolactones as Chiral Synthons
I. Lundt

Chemical and Chemo-enzymatic Approaches to Glycosidase Inhibitors with Basic Nitrogen in the Sugar Ring
A. de Raadt, C. W. Ekhart, M. Ebner, A.E. Stütz

The Synthesis of Novel Enzyme Inhibitors and Their Use in Defining the Active Sites of Glycan Hydrolases
R. V. Stick

Heparinoid Mimetics
H. P. Wessel

Recent Developments in the Rational Design of Multivalent Glycoconjugates
R. Roy

Amphiphilic Carbohydrates as a Tool for Molecular Recognition in Organized Systems
P. Boullanger
Recent examples of the use of a very old synthetic method are discussed. Discovery of the cation-catalyzed epimerization explains some of the previously controversial results. The mechanism of the reaction is discussed. Suggestions are made for improvements in yield and in the method of work-up.

**Keywords:** Epimerization, Synthesis of ketoses, Enediol intermediates

### 1 Introduction

Until the middle of the 20th century, carbohydrate chemistry was regarded as a separate, minor branch of organic chemistry; despite the tremendous importance of carbohydrates in nutrition, the food industry, in biology and medicine and as organic raw materials, they were regarded by many organic chemists with some dubiety. The sugars are not soluble in organic solvents, only in water; they cannot be distilled and frequently will not crystallize; and – worst of all – when
a reducing sugar is dissolved in water, it produces a solution containing at least six different compounds. Not like organic compounds at all.

This view has since changed. Eminent organic chemists have extended widely the range of reactions applied to carbohydrates and, in turn, carbohydrates have been used widely as starting materials for the synthesis of a great variety of organic compounds, especially chiral ones. Nevertheless, some reactions of carbohydrates, especially in aqueous solutions, remain untypical of organic reactions; in particular, epimerization is not often carried out during organic syntheses (and, if carried out, would not be called “epimerization”). Epimerization, i.e. change of the configuration of C-2 in aldoses (for formulae, see Osanai, this vol.), is one of the main topics of this volume. A short review on this subject has recently been published [1].

Many sugars occur in Nature in large quantities and are therefore readily available; others have never been detected in natural sources. In particular, L-sugars are rare, only L-sorbose, L-rhamnose and L-arabinose are readily available. The rare or unavailable sugars are usually prepared from the common ones (although there have been lately quite a few syntheses of sugars from simpler chemicals). Since all the sugars are stereoisomers of several other sugars, it is tempting to prepare the rare ones from common ones by rearrangements. Much of this volume deals with such rearrangements.

There is a problem, however. If molecules rearrange – without additional energy being supplied by adding groups and removing them – the reactions are reversible and the outcome is an equilibrium, the position of which is determined by the relative free energies of the starting sugars and the products. Nature prefers for its operations compounds with low free energy [2]: D-glucose – the most stable of all hexoses – is the most common monosaccharide in Nature. D-Galactose and D-fructose are also widespread. However, the less common sugars have higher free energies and hence are found as minor components in the rearrangement equilibria. For example, the very expensive D-talose (1) is obtained by epimerization of the very cheap D-galactose (2) but, naturally, the yield will be low because talose – with two syn-axial hydroxyl groups – has a much higher free energy. Methods in Carbohydrate Chemistry [3] describes four instances of sugar syntheses based on rearrangements and the yield in each case is less than 20%. At a time when organic chemists are aiming at yields close to 100% in most reactions, these do not appear satisfactory. Yet, often they are. The reasons for satisfaction are: plentiful cheap starting materials, reagents and solvents, only one reaction step, and simple work-up procedures. Only occasionally have there been attempts to shift the position of the equilibria.
It has often been stated that most inventions in chemistry are due to accidents; they were not planned or sought for. This applies to most of the rearrangements discussed in this book. The first such rearrangement was discovered [4–6] by Cornelis Adriaan Lobry von Trostenburg de Bruyn, professor at the University of Amsterdam, and his collaborator Willem Alberda van Ekenstein, chemist at the Government Sugar Laboratory. The reaction was named after them; however, their names being so cumbersome – this is the longest name given to any chemical reaction [7] – it will be referred to here as the “LdB-AvE rearrangement”. LdB and AvE were studying the degradation of D-glucose in alkaline solution in 1885 when they became aware, to their surprise, of the presence of other sugars in their reaction mixture. These were isolated and identified as D-mannose and D-fructose. The researchers also established that the same three sugars were present if mannose or fructose was used as the starting material. Thus the term “LdB-AvE rearrangement” includes two reactions: epimerization and aldose-ketose interconversion. In most cases, they occur simultaneously. During the 20th century, the LdB-AvE reaction has been used for the synthesis of many sugars. Its mechanism has been extensively studied but remains controversial. Speck [8] published an extensive review in 1958 on this reaction; the reader is referred to this for details that are not repeated here.

2 Experimental Procedures

The LdB-AvE reaction is usually conducted in basic solution; acids have a similar effect but that is of little practical importance. Sodium and calcium hydroxide in aqueous solution are the reagents commonly used. However, they cause a complex series of reactions: following epimerization and aldose-ketose interchange, further similar reactions occur along the chain, e.g. inversion on C-3 and migration of the keto group to C-3. Seven sugars (psicose, fructose, galactose, gulose, glucose, tagatose and sorbose) were found [9] in the mixture formed by the reaction of galactose or tagatose with potassium hydroxide. Some of the products were probably formed not through an enediol but by degradation to glyceraldehyde, followed by aldol condensation. After a prolonged period, all of the aldopenoses were found [9] amongst the reaction products formed from any of the aldopenoses. These reactions are followed by slower decomposition of all of the active species; more than 50 compounds (mostly acids) have been identified in the reaction mixture formed from D-glucose and aqueous sodium hydroxide [10]. To minimize such side reactions, the period of the reaction is reduced to a minimum, that is, equilibrium is seldom reached; and the concentration of the base is kept low. A marked improvement was the introduction of pyridine both as a solvent and a base [11] in 1927; pyridine has much less tendency to induce side reactions and makes it unnecessary to remove inorganic reagents. A good example is the preparation of D-glycero-tetrulose from D-erythrose in 39% yield [12]; another is the preparation of D-psicose from D-allose, which gives a 39% yield [13] and 50% after recycling the recovered allose. A more recent example is the preparation of 6-deoxy-L-fructose from L-rhamnose in 63% yield [14]. Ammonia and triethylamine have also been employed as bases in aqueous solu-
tion [15]. Anion-exchange resins in their hydroxide or aluminate form have been used as catalysts; the formation of fructose from glucose and from mannose has been studied by this method [16]. It is of industrial importance, as witnessed by numerous patents [17]. Borate was found, by chance, to promote the LdB-AvE reaction [18]: lactulose was formed from lactose during chromatography on a borate resin. A more efficient method is to use borate together with triethylamine [19].

When a new application of the LdB-AvE reaction is investigated, it is important to determine the best time to terminate the reaction. This is because the amount of the desired product will reach a maximum and then decline owing to the appearance of other isomers which are formed less rapidly, and to the general degradation of all the sugars. Mendicino [20] found that the presence of sodium borate slows down the degradations, hence a better yield of the product may be obtained. The proportion of fructose or psicose amongst the products increased in the presence of borate [21]. Benzeneboronate has a similar effect [22]. It appears that this observation has not been widely utilized.

Various sugars epimerize at different rates. For example, mannose is converted much slower than glucose or fructose [9] and it is also formed more slowly. Idose reacts very rapidly in the presence of bases, altrose rapidly but allose slowly [23]. The most investigated case is, of course, the glucose-mannose-fructose system. The products are formed in a ratio of approximately 4:1:4. More accurate figures have been quoted but the composition will depend on the nature of the base and of the starting material. True equilibrium, as already stated, is probably never obtained [9].

3 Epimerization

Of the two parallel reactions, epimerization is now of minor importance. The epimerized aldose is usually obtained in much smaller yield than the ketose, and has seldom been isolated. However, if C-2 does not carry a free hydroxyl group – and therefore a ketose cannot be formed – epimerization becomes a practical method of synthesis; examples are 2,4,6-tri-O-methyl-D-mannose from the corresponding D-glucose derivative [24] with barium hydroxide in 50% yield and N-acetyl-D-mannosamine from N-acetyl-D-glucosamine with calcium hydroxide in 20% yield [25]. A very useful synthetic application is the isomerization of 2,3-O-isopropylidene-aldoses in the open-chain form [26]. Curiously, if O-2 is replaced by sulfur, the LdB-AvE epimerization proceeds very easily: 2-S-ethyl-2-thio-D-glucose is obtained from the corresponding mannose derivative by the use of sodium bicarbonate [27]. Apparently, the presence of an electron-attracting group on C-2 facilitates the formation of the enolate anion. Another example is the epimerization of 2-thiosophorose (2-S-β-D-glucopyranosyl-2-thio-D-glucose) (3) to the manno-compound 4 by sodium bicarbonate [28]; this latter isomer, which is a syrup, had to be kept in a quartz tube because it slowly isomerized in a glass (presumably soda-glass) sample tube. Under the exceptionally facile conditions of these epimerizations, the other possible reactions do not seem to interfere.
Closely related to this reaction is the base-catalyzed epimerization of aldonic acids and their lactones (see Lundt and Madsen, this vol.). This reaction is, of course, even older than the LdB-AvE process, and was first used by Emil Fischer [29]. Potassium hydroxide and tertiary amines (pyridine, quinoline) have been used as bases. The reaction is much slower than the epimerization of sugars and requires prolonged heating, but the aldonic acids are much more stable to the action of bases than the sugars, and no side reactions occur. The reaction proceeds even if the hydroxyl group at C-2 is methylated [30]. The kinetics and the mechanism of the interconversion of the aldopentonic acids in potassium hydroxide solution have been studied; this reaction also occurs via the enediol and the removal of H-2 is the rate-determining step [31]. It is of industrial importance, as indicated by numerous patents [32].

When an alduronic acid is submitted to these conditions, reaction may occur at both ends of the molecule. Carlsson et al. [33] studied the reaction of D-glucuronic acid, as its potassium salt, at 100 °C for 3 h and then found 35% of D-lyxo-5-hexulosonic acid (of the configuration of fructose), 15% of D-ribo-hexulosonic acid (of the psicose configuration), 8% of D-mannuronic acid, 5% of D-altruronic acid and 1% of D-alluronic acid; the conversion of the aldehyde to the keto group is therefore predominant. However, in an earlier study, under practically the same conditions, epimerization of C-5 was found to be the main reaction [34]. In working out a successful synthesis of L-iduronic acid from D-glucuronic acid, it was found necessary to mask the reducing end of the latter by forming a 1,2-O-isopropylidene derivative [35].

4 Syntheses of Ketoses

With the development of newer methods of epimerization – the Bílik reaction (Petruş, Petruşová and Hricoviniová, this vol.) and the nickel-amine catalyzed rearrangement (see Osanai, this vol.) – the LdB-AvE epimerization of aldoses is no longer the best choice. On the other hand, the synthesis of ketoses from aldoses by the LdB-AvE reaction is of great interest. Already in their second paper, LdB and AvE described [5] the isolation and characterization of D-tagatose, a ketose previously not known, from D-galactose. The reaction is of industrial importance, as testified by numerous patents [17]. After equilibration, more ketose is usually found than aldose. For example, the equilibrium constant of D-fructose/D-mannose is 2.45 [36]. (The equilibrium constants of pentuloses/pentoses are all well below 1 but that is readily explained: the former cannot form pyranoses only furanoses and hence are less stable.) In the 1950s several enzy-
mes became available [37] which were capable of catalyzing the aldose-ketose interconversion; such a specific enzyme is preferable to the chemical reaction since the epimerized aldose and other by-products are not formed (see Häusler and Stütz, this vol.). Speck stated [8]: “For some unknown reason, the best yields have consistently been obtained in the formation of \( \text{D-gluco-heptulose from D-glycero-D-gulo-heptose} \). The reason is now quite obvious: the gulo configuration (5) of the aldose is of high energy, owing to its two axial hydroxyl groups, whereas the ketose formed has the most stable, all-equatorial configuration (6). Idose is of even higher free energy than gulose. Storing it in Jena glass tubes will convert it gradually into sorbose [38]. Idose is the only aldohexose which has not been found in any natural source, neither the \( D \), nor the \( L \) form.

![Diagram 5: Aldose and Ketose Structures](image)

A ketose is rarely used as the starting material for the LdB-AvE transformation. The reaction in that case is even more complicated: besides formation of aldoses, epimerization of the ketose may occur and, if the keto group is at C-3, it may occur on both sides of the keto group. Thus, Schaffer [39] obtained \( \text{D-gluco}, \text{D-manno-} \) and \( \text{D-alto-heptuloses from D-manno-3-heptulose by the action of calcium hydroxide. The involvement of 3,4-enediols has been proven, even when aldoses were used as starting materials [40]. One instance of the epimerization of a ketose is the preparation of \( \text{D-psicose from D-fructose [15]; triethylamine was used as the base. In this case, the often cumbersome separation of starting material and products was achieved by the use of a cation-exchange column in its calcium form [41]. The size of this column could have been reduced to half by the use of lanthanum as the cation [42], or even further by the use of neodymium [43]. This technique should be used more often because frequently the desired sugar, with a higher number of axial hydroxyl groups, will complex more strongly with cations [44]. In fact, the first application of chromatography on a cation-exchange column was for the separation of an LdB-AvE mixture: galactose, tagatose and talose, eluted in that order [45]. A column with lead cations was used for the analysis of mixtures formed in the LdB-AvE reaction [9] but lead is not particularly suitable for preparative separations [44]. One might suggest that, in the case of \( \text{D-psicose}, addition of a salt of a complexing cation to the reaction mixture might have shifted the equilibrium in favor of the product which readily forms a complex. Addition of such a salt would not interfere with the separation on the column if the same cation were to be used for the reaction and for the column. \)
This preparation of D-psicose illustrates the possible economy of a reaction proceeding in poor yield. The yield is only 8% but the starting material and the reagents are so cheap that it is worth carrying out this one-step reaction on a large scale. With standard laboratory equipment, 10 g can be prepared in 2–3 days. Another preparation of D-psicose, from D-allose in boiling pyridine [13], would also benefit from the use of a cation-exchange column, particularly because psicose has never been obtained in the crystalline state. The column gives pure psicose without crystallization.

There appears to be no description of the synthesis of an aldose from a ketose by the LdB-AvE reaction on the preparative scale.

5 Catalysis by Cations?

In the long history of the LdB-AvE transformation [8], the suggestion has appeared several times that the reaction is catalyzed by calcium ions, but the proof has often been inconclusive. There are several points on which different authors disagree. Let us examine some of them. Kusin reported [46] that when D-glucose reacted in calcium hydroxide solution at 25 °C no fructose was formed whereas, in a solution of sodium hydroxide, fructose was detected under the same conditions. This is contrary to the observations of LdB and AvE [4], Sowden and Schaffer [47] and Topper and Stetten [48], who all isolated fructose from the reaction in calcium hydroxide solutions.

Sowden and Schaffer [49] also detected what appeared to be a catalytic effect of calcium ions. They studied the reaction of mannose and found that it disappeared much faster in a solution of calcium hydroxide than it did in barium hydroxide and, in turn, in the latter medium faster than in sodium hydroxide. They followed the reaction by polarimetry and the results proved rather puzzling: in sodium hydroxide solution the initial rotation was positive (as it should be for D-mannose) and declined over time; but in calcium hydroxide the rotation was negative and increased as the reaction proceeded. The behavior in barium hydroxide was intermediate. Clearly, something more than mere catalysis was involved here. Incidentally, in LdB-AvE’s original work [4], the greatest amount of mannose was produced in a concentrated solution of calcium hydroxide.

Kusin’s results were recently confirmed, by chance and unexpectedly. During studies on the nickel-amine catalyzed epimerization (see Osanai, this vol.), calcium hydroxide plus amine was also tried [50] and proved successful. However, calcium cations do not form complexes with amines; and when calcium hydroxide was tried without the amine, mannose was still formed from glucose but not fructose [51]. It was found that the reaction did not proceed through an enediol but by carbon-carbon bond migration within a calcium complex.

Hence it appears that calcium ions indeed exert a catalytic effect but on another reaction, not on the LdB-AvE transformation. The two reactions run simultaneously but the calcium-catalyzed one is faster – hence if interrupted at an early stage, the amount of ketose formed is minimal.

The controversial results can now be explained. Kusin [46] used one equivalent of calcium hydroxide, sufficient to convert most of the glucose into a com-
plex; thereby the LdB-AvE reaction is impeded. However, the earlier workers used only sufficient calcium hydroxide to raise the pH to a value where the LdB-AvE reaction ran smoothly, in order to minimize the side effects. Only a small proportion of the sugar formed a complex and the calcium-catalyzed epimerization was negligible. It is also clear now that the negative rotation observed by Sowden and Schaffer [49] was due to a calcium-mannose complex, not to mannose alone. Barium forms a weaker complex and sodium none.

6 The Calcium-Catalyzed Epimerization

Yanagihara et al. [51] claimed that calcium was the only metal cation which catalyzed the epimerization; they tried many others but only strontium had a weak effect. A closer investigation [52] showed cations that complex well with polyols [44] all catalyze the epimerization; those metals tested by Yanagihara et al. were poor complex formers. Calcium hydroxide is best suited for this reaction because it has reasonable solubility in water and is readily available. The reaction can also be conducted in methanol in which both calcium hydroxide and the sugars have only low solubility; but when they are both present, the solvent dissolves many of them, owing to complex formation.

The calcium-catalyzed epimerization is clearly different from the LdB-AvE transformation. It does not proceed through the enediol; when it is conducted in deuterium oxide, there is no incorporation of deuterium; and, if C-1 is substituted by $^{13}$C, the substituent shifts to become C-2. The mechanism is therefore the same as in the Bílik and in the nickel-amine catalyzed epimerization, a carbon-carbon migration. This mechanism is explained [52] by the formation of a complex between calcium cations and the anionic form of the sugar; this holds the sugar in a conformation suitable for the migration of the bond from C-2 to C-3, just as molybdic acid and nickel-amine do. To convert most of the sugar to this complex, an amount of calcium hydroxide equivalent to the sugar is required, or even more; this is where the reaction conditions differ from those of the LdB-AvE reaction.

Curiously, the calcium-catalyzed epimerization does not occur with galactose. It was found to require a threo configuration of O-3 and O-4. To explain this, it was postulated [52] that calcium complexes with four oxygen atoms, namely O-1, O-2, O-3 and O-4. Structure 7 was therefore suggested for the complex. If the configuration of C-4 were reversed, such a complex would have a very unfavorable conformation. Cations usually complex with only three hydroxyl groups on a carbon chain; however, an ionic form of the sugar would have a
greater attraction to the cation and four of its oxygen atoms could replace the usual water molecules surrounding the cation. The distribution of the hydrogen atoms and the negative charge are not known and are therefore not shown in structure 7.

Owing to the large amount of calcium used, the reaction lends itself to the exploitation of complexation to increase the yield. Mannose (owing to its cis hydroxyl groups) forms a stronger complex than glucose does and, in the presence of a substantial amount of calcium ions, the equilibrium is shifted in favor of the former. Complex formation is stronger in methanol than in water [44] and in methanolic solution a yield of 55% of mannose can be obtained [51]. In water, in the absence of cations, the equilibrium mixture contains only 25% of mannose.

If this reaction is applied to a ketose it should result not in epimerization but in the formation of a branched-chain sugar, a 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose, because the carbon atom which migrates carries a hydroxymethyl group. Preliminary results show that this is indeed the outcome of the reaction [53].

The interconversion of N-acetyl-D-glucosamine and N-acetyl-D-mannosamine in a saturated solution of calcium hydroxide [25], which leads to a 4:1 equilibrium, also proceeds by the calcium-catalyzed mechanism. It occurs very much faster in calcium hydroxide than in sodium hydroxide or barium hydroxide solution.

This reaction, being essentially restricted to the glucose/mannose and xylose/lyxose system and related equilibria, is not of wide applicability. It could be useful for the heptoses and for isotopically labeled or substituted sugars where the potentially higher yields make it desirable. However, the reaction is of interest because the carbon-carbon migration occurs with such ease (10 min at 65 °C is sufficient to almost reach equilibrium; the Bílik reaction requires 4 h at 90 °C), and a detailed study of its mechanism would be of interest.

7 The Mechanism of the LdB-AvE Transformation

It is generally agreed that the LdB-AvE reaction proceeds by an intermediate enediol structure; that is, the bond between the hydrogen atom and C-2 is broken and is then reinstated in another configuration or to another carbon atom. Wohl and Neuberg [54] were the first to suggest the enediol intermediate. It was confirmed by the fact that when the reaction was conducted in deuterium oxide, glucose, mannose and fructose were all found to be deuterium substituted; that is, deuterium from the solvent entered the molecules [55]. In subsequent experiments, sugars substituted with deuterium [47] or labeled with tritium [56, 57] were employed. Some of the label was lost during the LdB-AvE transformation. In illustrating the reaction, different authors have interpolated various supposed intermediates (or transition states) but essentially the reaction path is as shown in Scheme 1; full details are discussed at the end of this section.

However, during the last 60 years, there has been much dispute about this mechanism: numerous papers have appeared and various modifications of the simple enediol mechanism have been proposed. Many of these are reported in Speck’s review [8]. There is poor agreement between the results of various au-
thors and in some cases they are contradictory. It has sometimes been suggested that another concurrent reaction path exists; this has now been confirmed by the recognition of the cation-catalyzed epimerization. Most of the early investigations were carried out with $\text{D}$-glucose in solutions of calcium hydroxide. The extent to which the cation-catalyzed reaction would have contributed to the outcome of the reaction would therefore have been dependent on the amount of the calcium hydroxide used. This is particularly evident in the results of Fredenhausen and Bonhoeffer [55], where the outcome of the reaction clearly depended on the concentration of the calcium hydroxide. It is not possible, however, to correlate the results of the different investigators because they used different cations, concentrations, temperatures and reaction times. In particular, the authors refer to solutions saturated with calcium hydroxide but it is not stated whether saturation was carried out before or after the addition of sugar; this would have made a big difference because the solubility of calcium hydroxide is greatly increased by the presence of polyols. It is clear, for example, that with a large amount of calcium hydroxide present, the calcium-catalyzed reaction would have prevailed and there would have not been any incorporation of deuterium. However, equilibrium is rapidly established and, if the reaction is not then terminated, the slower LdB-AvE reaction will proceed and the ultimate result will be the formation of fructose and deuterium substitution.

Several modifications of the mechanism have been proposed in order to explain some of the incongruous results. It was suggested that mannose is not directly formed from glucose but from fructose. This is clearly inconsistent with the fact that sugars that cannot form a ketose (e.g., 2-O-methyl derivatives) are also converted into their epimers. Sowden and Schaffer [47] proved that fructose is not a necessary intermediate in the epimerization. They also suggested that there were two forms of the enediol, cis and trans, each giving rise to only one aldose. This seems very unlikely: the two forms would interchange very rapidly, and the cis form would be much more stable, being a resonance hybrid stabilized by an intramolecular hydrogen bond [58]. Only this form is shown in Scheme 1. Berl and Feazel had already suggested the resonance structure [59] and Bamford and Collins [60] proved that only one di-enol anion is involved in the reaction.
To explain some of the anomalous results in the distribution of tritium in d-arabinose formed from \((2-^3\text{H})\)ribose, Gleason and Barker [56] suggested that some of the reaction occurred by transfer of the C-2 hydrogen atom with its electrons to C-1, rather than by enolization. This appears unlikely to be energetically favored. Isbell [61] found that hydride transfer was insignificant in the conversion of d-glucose to d-fructose. These results can now be explained. The “tritium migration” could have occurred by the cation-catalyzed epimerization path; actually, C-2 would have migrated, carrying the tritium atom with it. Hence migration was found during the epimerization but not during the aldose-ketose interconversion (which is not catalyzed by cations).

The facile epimerization of aldoses that carry a sulfur atom on C-2 does not involve any other mechanism except enediol formation [28]; there is complete exchange of H-2 for deuterium when the reaction is carried out in heavy water. The epimerization of aldonic acids also proceeds via the enediol; here also complete exchange of H-2 occurs in heavy water [31]. Similarly, the enzyme-catalyzed epimerization proceeds via the enediol but, recently, a case has been described for which a path involving carbon-carbon migration was postulated [62]. de Wit et al. [58] carried out a more detailed study of the enolization process by using ultraviolet (UV) spectroscopy; reaction rate constants were determined. These data suggest that the neutral open-chain aldehyde form is not involved in the process. The base removes the proton from O-1 of the cyclic form, this being the most acidic proton in the molecule; then the ring of the sugar anion opens, the charge moving to O-5. It is the anionic O-5 that extracts the proton from O-2, thereby producing the enediol anion. This is the rate-determining step of the enolization. The essential steps are shown in Scheme 2 (without the steric details which were carefully worked out by the authors). The UV spectra show that the concentration of the enediol anion is up to 0.6% of the starting sugar. Calcium ions increase the rate of formation of the enediol anion [63].
Isbell and his group have carried out extensive investigations on the LdB-AvE reaction [9, 12, 14, 23, 57, 61] dealing mainly with the enolization step. However, the last of their papers [23] presents some puzzling results. The rate of disappearance of all of the hexoses was studied in aqueous potassium hydroxide solution at pH 11.5. Owing to the formation of acidic by-products, the pH dropped and had to be occasionally readjusted to 11.5 by the addition of potassium hydroxide. The results are useful in showing that the rate of the reaction varies considerably with the configuration of the sugar. Thus, idose reacts very rapidly, the reaction of altrose and talose is fast, that of glucose slower and that of allose and mannose very slow. Ketoses react faster, particularly tagatose.

The proportion of glucose, mannose and fructose ultimately approaches that at equilibrium, no matter which is the starting material. However, the disappearance of allose comes to a stop at about 75%, much higher than the equilibrium value; from altrose only 5% of allose is produced. The final proportion in some other cases is also far from that at equilibrium. The proposed explanation for these results, formation of hydrogen-bonded, unreactive ions or molecular complexes, is clearly unsatisfactory. Maybe the formation of acidic by-products from the less stable sugars creates conditions unfavorable for the LdB-AvE reaction even if the pH is kept constant. There are, indeed, many by-products: after 5 days at 55 °C in a solution of potassium hydroxide at pH 11.5, the total monosaccharides remaining in a solution of d-mannose accounted for only 16% of the starting sugar.

Glyceraldehyde and dihydroxyacetone interconvert at higher temperatures in aqueous solution even in the absence of a base. The reaction has recently been studied by infrared spectroscopy [64] and, here also, the enediol proved to be the intermediate but in its undissociated form. It has been suggested that it also has a hydrogen bond but it connects OH-3 to OH-1, the enediol being trans.

To summarize: the main reaction path of the LdB-AvE transformation is undoubtedly the one involving the anion of the enediol. A small proportion of the products, however, may be formed by the cation-catalyzed mechanism, by degradation and recombination, and possibly by other ways. There is no evidence of the occurrence of hydride migration, except when the reaction is catalyzed by acids [65]. The reaction path has always been illustrated as starting with the aldehydo form of the sugars and leading to the aldehydo or keto form of another sugar but it is by no means certain that these open-chain forms are intermediates in the LdB-AvE reaction; the enediol anion may be formed directly from a cyclic form and be converted into a cyclic form of another sugar.

8
Concluding Remarks

After more than a century, the LdB-AvE transformation is unlikely to find new uses or be developed further; in many cases it has been displaced by newer reactions. However, if the old procedures were to be applied, they could probably be improved in two ways. In some instances the equilibria could be shifted in favor of the desired product by the addition of complexing agents: either boric acid or boronates, or an excess of cations, like Ca^{2+}, thereby improving the yield. In other
cases, the work-up could be simplified by the use of chromatography on cation-exchange resins. This would result in a better separation and improved yield of the product.

9 References

4. Lobry de Bruyn CA, Alberda van Ekenstein W (1895) Rec Trava Chim Pays-Bas 14:203
5. Lobry de Bruyn CA, Alberda van Ekenstein W (1896) Rec Trava Chim Pays-Bas 15:92
6. Lobry de Bruyn CA, Alberda van Ekenstein W (1895) Rec Trava Chim Pays-Bas 14:156; ibid (1897) 16:262, 274, 282; (1899); ibid 18:147; ibid (1900) 19:1
11. Fischer HOL, Taube G, Baer E (1927) Ber 60:479
21. de Bruijn JM, Kieboom HPG, van Bekkum H (1986) Rec Trav Chim Pays-Bas 105:176
29. Fischer E (1890) Ber 23:799; ibid (1891) 24:2136
34. Fischer FG, Schmidt H (1959) Chem Ber 92:2184
38. Vargha L (1954) Ber 87:1351
46. Kusin A (1936) Ber 69:1041
54. Wohl A, Neuberg C (1900) Ber 33:3095
63. de Bruijn JM, Kieboom APG, van Bekkum H (1987) Rec Trav Chim Pays-Bas 106:35
The Bílik Reaction

Ladislav Petruš, Mária Petrušová, Zuzana Hricoviniová

Institute of Chemistry, Slovak Academy of Sciences, 84238 Bratislava, Slovakia

1 E-mail: chemlpet@savba.sk,
2 E-mail: chemlaci@savba.sk,
3 E-mail: chemhric@savba.sk

The introduction of the Bílik reaction, the molybdic acid catalyzed interconversion of epimeric aldoses, is an important milestone in carbohydrate chemistry. The essentials of this unique, stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangement of epialdoses are presented. Emphasis is laid on the latest developments in the area, namely the mutual interconversion of 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses, a reaction that is exploited for the preparation of some important representatives of these reducing sugars. Mechanistic studies with isotopically substituted D-fructoses are also described.

Keywords: Bílik reaction, Molybdic acid catalysis, Epimerization, Carbon-skeleton rearrangement, Aldoses, 2-Ketoses, 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)aldoses, Hamamelose, Sedoheptulose

1 Introduction .............................................................. 16

2 Essentials of the Bílik Reaction ...................................... 16

2.1 Discovery ............................................................... 16

2.2 Substrate Scope and Limitations ................................... 17

2.3 Catalysts ............................................................... 19

2.4 Mechanism ............................................................ 20

2.5 Secondary Process .................................................... 23

2.6 Other Catalytic Systems Causing Skeletal Rearrangement of Epimeric Aldoses ................................................ 26

3 Application of the Bílik Reaction for the Mutual Interconversion of 2-Ketoses and 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)aldoses ................................................ 27

3.1 Preliminary Studies ..................................................... 28

3.2 Preparation of 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)aldoses ......................... 29

3.2.1 D-Hamamelose and Other 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)pentoses .......... 29

3.2.1.1 Mechanistic Studies ............................................. 30

3.2.2 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)tetroses ................................... 35

3.3 Preparation of 2-Ketoses ............................................. 36

3.3.1 Sedoheptulose ...................................................... 36

3.3.2 D-glycero-D-ido-Octulose ........................................ 37

3.4 Conclusions .......................................................... 38

4 Perspectives ........................................................... 39

5 References ............................................................. 39
1 Introduction

In 1972, a remarkable carbohydrate reaction, the molybdic acid catalyzed epimerization of aldoses, was reported [1], filling an existing gap in the synthesis of carbohydrates. While the facile preparation of ketoses from common aldoses by the Lobry de Bruyn-Alberda van Ekenstein isomerization reaction has been known since the end of the 19th century [2], several aldoses, formerly called rare aldoses, were only available rather infrequently, as their preparation procedures were very demanding. It is indubitable that the simple aldose interconversion, named the Bílik reaction after its discoverer, substantially helped to ignite the carbohydrate research boom that started at approximately the same time. Namely, an early commercialization of the Bílik reaction has made such aldoses as L-glucose, L-ribose, L-lyxose, D-lyxose, D-talose, or D-mannose easily available in one-step reactions starting from their more common respective epimers. Over the decades, different quantities of the pertinent sugars, ranging from grams up to hundreds of kilograms, have streamed to carbohydrate investigators in a broad array of research fields, through several chemical suppliers, chiefly from a Bratislava pilot plant facility.

In the meantime, other catalytic systems that enable similar interconversions of aldoses have been described. However, these have not been as widely exploited as the reaction catalyzed with molybdic acid. Despite the initial interest, approximately 15 years after the reaction had first been reported, investigations of the Bílik reaction and other related interconversions, in the main centered on their scope and mechanisms, had apparently exhausted all avenues of interest. In the mid-1990s, however, new, interesting applications of the reactions appeared which have subsequently facilitated easy obtainment of, e.g., some branched-chain aldoses, thus suggesting further possible developments in the area. Although the aim of this overview is to provide a survey of these latest developments, a brief description of the earlier stages of the research, as well as a necessary description of the mechanism of the Bílik reaction, are also included since there is still no available comprehensive review on the topic.

2 Essentials of the Bílik Reaction

2.1 Discovery

Similarly to many other great discoveries, the molybdic acid catalyzed interconversion of epimeric aldoses is the result of serendipity. Thus, when D-talose, obtained from another, lesser-known reaction also discovered by V. Bílik, namely the stereoselective, molybdate-catalyzed hydroxylation of glycals [3], was repeatedly recrystallized (in the presence of a catalyst that had not been completely removed), it was not possible to obtain it in a pure condition, as the aldose slowly epimerized to D-galactose [4]. A simple verification of the explanation of this originally undesirable interconversion, the treatment of D-galac-
tose with molybdenum(VI) oxide in water at increased temperature, gave rise to D-talose. In spite of these primary observations of the molybdate-catalyzed epimerization of aldoses, the first two papers published describing the new interconversion of the epimeric aldoses were devoted to the glucose to mannose (and vice versa) mutual transformations in both the D and L series [1a,b], as no parallel reactions occurred during the interconversions performed under mild reaction conditions.

2.2 Substrate Scope and Limitations

As a result of extensive studies performed with as many epimeric pairs of aldoses as possible, the scope and limitations of the Bílik reaction (Scheme 1) can be summed up as follows. The treatment of an aldose, not shorter than a tetrose, in a mild acidic solution in the presence of molybdate ions (usually by heating an aqueous solution containing 10–20% of starting aldose and 0.1–0.2% molybdic acid for 2–6 h at 70–90°C) gives rise to an equilibrium mixture of epimeric aldoses, without formation of the complementary 2-ketose, and independent of which aldose is used as starting material. In every case, a conformationally more stable aldose prevails in the thermodynamic mixture of the epimeric aldoses.

Since one aldose of any epimeric pair is usually more easily available than the other, either directly isolable from its natural source or in combination with a chain-length modification, the application of the Bílik reaction enables the other, less-available aldose to be obtained. Thus, the following equilibria can be obtained:

- D-Threose/D-erythrose 4:3 [5]
- 5-Deoxy-L-arabinose/5-deoxy-L-ribose 3:1 [6]
- D-Xylose/D-lyxose 7:5 [7]
- L-Arabinose/L-ribose 2:1 [8]
- D-Glucose/D-mannose 3:1 [1a]
- D-Galactose/D-talose 4:1 [9]
- D-Allose/D-altrose 3:2 [10]
- L-Quinovose/L-rhamnose 3:2 [11]
- L-Fucose/6-deoxy-L-talose 4:1 [6]
- 7-Deoxy-L-glycero-L-galacto-heptose/

Similar thermodynamic equilibria were also obtained with a few other higher aldoses (D-erythro-L-galacto-octose, D-erythro-L-talo-octose, D-threo-L-galactoctose, D-threo-L-talo-octose [14], D-erythro-L-gluco-octose and D-erythro-L-manno-octose [15]) and some 1–6 linked reducing disaccharides (melibiose (6-O-α-D-galactopyranosyl-D-glucose) and epimelibiose (6-O-α-D-galactopyrano-
syl-d-mannose) [16]) on treatment with molybdic acid. Again, the prevailing epimers were those with the galacto or gluco configurations at their C-2 to C-5 atoms. While common 1–4 linked reducing disaccharides such as lactose (4-O-β-D-galactopyranosyl-D-glucose) and maltose (4-O-α-D-glucopyranosyl-D-glucose), as well as their epimers (epilactose and epimaltose), do not undergo molybdic acid catalyzed epimerization [17], celtrobiose (4-O-β-D-glucopyranosyl-D-altrose) does to give epiceltrobiose (4-O-β-D-glucopyranosyl-D-allose) [18].

The importance of the presence of the OH group at C-4 for an unambiguous course of the molybdate-catalyzed epimerization was further shown in studies with trioses [19, 20], 4-deoxy-D-lyxo-hexose and several other 4-O-substituted derivatives of aldoses [20]. Much more important is the OH group at C-3 which is essential for the Bílik reaction. Its absence causes a quite different structural change in both 3-deoxy-D-arabino-hexose (1) and 3-deoxy-D-ribo-hexose (2) under otherwise the same reaction conditions; both sugars on treatment with molybdic acid are irreversibly transformed to 3-deoxy-D-erythro-hex-2-ulose (3, Scheme 2) [21].

The essentiality of the OH group at C-2 for the epimerization of aldoses is obvious. The same is valid for the carbonyl group of aldoses since alditols do not undergo epimerization changes in molybdic acid [20, 21].

The most stable epimeric pair of aldoses, D-glucose and D-mannose, has been often used as the model system for optimization, kinetic and mechanistic studies of the reaction.
Catalysts

The rate of the molybdate-catalyzed epimerization reaction is highest in the pH range 1.5–3.5 and is up to 20 times higher than at pH 5.9, where the cyclic species of aldoses form the most stable molybdate complexes [21, 22]. At pH higher than 6.0 and below pH 0.1 the molybdate-catalyzed epimerization of aldoses does not occur [22, 23].

Practically any molybdenum(VI) compound can be used for the molybdate-catalyzed epimerization of aldoses, provided that the pH of the reaction mixture is adjusted with an acid to the aforementioned optimum value. There are a few restrictions: oxalic acid, which inhibits the Bílik reaction [22] apparently due to the formation of its bidentate molybdenum(VI)-oxalate complexes [24], and some hydroxycarboxylic acids which behave similarly cannot be considered for use. In practice, ammonium heptamolybdate (giving aqueous solutions with pH ~ 5.7) in combination with a mineral acid is widely used. This is, however, not the most convenient solution, as the removal of the catalyst by deanionization with an anion-exchange resin must be immediately followed by decationization because the basic medium can, in some cases, spoil the result of the molybdic acid catalyzed transformation. The same is valid for ammonium dimolybdate (giving aqueous solutions with pH ~ 4.5) which is, in some chemical catalogues, improperly named as molybdic acid. There are two forms of the real molybdic acid [25]; both of them possess a polymeric structure (the “white” molybdic acid, MoO$_3$·H$_2$O, is an infinite double chain while the yellow molybdic acid, MoO$_3$·2H$_2$O, is an infinite double plain). The acids crystallize from fresh precipitates obtained on strong acidification of aqueous ammonium polymolybdate solutions. The fresh precipitates [26] are very soluble in water, give solutions of pH ~ 2.9, which is an optimum value for the Bílik reaction, and the catalyst is easily removed by a single deanionization with a strongly basic anion-exchange resin. The same effect can be obtained even with molybdenum(VI) oxide that forms a three-dimensional polymer network [27]. Although the oxide is poorly soluble in water, under the conditions of the Bílik reaction it quickly dissolves and functions properly [23].

Two more sophisticated applications of the molybdate catalyst are worthy of mention. An anion-exchange resin immobilized heptamolybdate has provided an effective catalysis while the same resin activated with mononuclear sodium molybdate was completely ineffective [23]. In contrast, a patent application claims a successful activation with the same sodium molybdate for an effective epimerization of $\alpha$-glucose to $\alpha$-mannose [28]. Therefore, attention has to be paid when performing such applications as the equilibria between the (poly)molybdate species in solution are very complex and extremely pH-sensitive [29].

Dioxobis(2,4-pentanedionato-$O,O'$)molybdenum(VI) has been reported as a catalyst for molybdate-catalyzed epimerizations in polar aprotic solvents such as dimethylformamide (DMF) [30]. In spite of more interesting reaction equilibria, the method is not as convenient or as economical as the classical aqueous one due to necessary additional purification procedures.
2.4 
Mechanism

Since the first observation of the molybdic acid catalyzed interconversion of epimeric aldoses it has been clear that the mechanism of the reaction is different to the enediol pathway of the Lobry de Bruyn-Alberda van Ekenstein (LdB-AvE) isomerization reaction of aldoses that provides 2-ketoses as primary major products [31]. Moreover, the interconverting aldoses do not incorporate deuterium if the molybdic acid catalyzed reaction is performed in deuterium oxide [32]. Furthermore, using specifically the tritium-labeled aldoses that were available in the 1970s, it has been proved that during the interconversion D-[1-3H]glucose transforms to D-[2-3H]mannose and vice versa. The results suggested that the process is intramolecular and involves a simultaneous transfer of the hydrogen atoms linked to the carbon atoms C-1 and C-2.

All these unusual observations have suggested that the reaction must involve molybdate complexes of the interconverting aldoses. Molybdate complexes of saccharides [33] and other polyhydroxy compounds [27] are known and several types of structures have been proposed and proved in which the ligands can be of bidentate, tridentate or tetradeutate nature. To explain the simultaneous hydrogen transfer suggested, the idea of bidentate aldopyranose ligands in linear oligomolybdate chains present in solutions at pH \( \leq 5 \) was adopted [32]. Typical examples of such bidentate ligands in molybdate complexes are dimolybdates \( (\text{NH}_4)_2\left[\text{MoO}_2(C_6H_4O_2)\right]O \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \) [34] and \( K_2\left[\text{MoO}_2(C_2O_4)\text{H}_2\text{O}\right]_2\text{O} \) or polymolybdate \( \left\{\text{NH}_4\text{Na[MoO}_3(C_2O_4)\right.}\text{H}_2\text{O}\left.\right\} \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \) \( n \) [24]. In every case the bidentate ligands are planar. The aldopyranose bidentate ligand suggested could adopt such a planar structure to be efficiently bound only after a deformation of the C-3-C-2-C-1-O-5 segment of its chair conformation with both original C-2-OH and C-1-OH hydroxyl groups in the equatorial positions. In such a half-chair \( ^4H_5 \)-conformation of the aldose moiety of the complex 5, which must be in an equilibrium with the \( ^4H^5 \)-conformer 6, the parallel, trans-oriented C-2-H and C-1-H bond orbitals can efficiently overlap to form two transitory tricentric bonds (Scheme 3). This transition state could mediate the intramolecular hydrogen transfer between the carbon atoms C-1 and C-2 causing simultaneous configurational changes there, i.e. epimerization at C-2 in the final aldopyranose 7 (the configurational change at C-1 is not observable due to a fast anomeric equilibration) [32].

In 1982, however, a paper from a laboratory involved in the synthesis of saccharides enriched with stable isotopes appeared [20] which fundamentally changed the interpretation of the former results and significantly contributed to the completion of the understanding of the mechanism of the Bílik reaction. Namely, when aldoses \(^{13}\text{C}\)-isotopically substituted at C-1 or C-2 were subjected to molybdate-catalyzed epimerization in order to prepare the corresponding epimers, the C-1, C-2 carbon-skeleton rearranged products were isolated instead. Thus, D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})\text{mannose}, D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})\text{talose}, D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})\text{galactose, D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{glucose, 6-deoxy-L-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{talose, 6-deoxy-L-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{talose, D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{xylose and D-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{arabinose gave D-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{glucose, D-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{galactose, D-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{talose, D-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{mannose, L-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{fucose, L-(1-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{fucose, D-(2-{\(^{13}\text{C}\})}\text{lyxose and D-(2-}
Based on these observations, and the structures of the molybdate complexes of D-mannitol and D-lyxose determined by X-ray crystal structural analysis (which have appeared since) [35, 36], the acyclic, aldehyde forms of interconverting aldoses in the respective zigzag and sickle conformations, linked in the dimolybdate anionic complexes as tetradentate ligands via their carbonyl (O-1) and neighboring three hydroxylic (O-2, O-3 and O-4) oxygen atoms, were suggested as the active species mediating the stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangement, formally resulting in the C-2 epimerization of aldoses [20]. The interpretation scheme suggested by the authors is still accepted except for the participation of the aldehyde oxygen in the molybdate complexes of the interconverting aldoses. A close analysis of the structure of the molybdate complexes of aldoses [27, 35–37] reveals strict stereochemical rules, according to which all the participating oxygen atoms must come from the hydroxyl groups. Namely, two hydroxyl groups of the sugar, linked in a tetradentate fashion in the dimolybdate complex, are formally esterified (each of them linked to a different molybdenum atom) while the other two hydroxyls are coordinated to both molybdenum atoms and release their protons to give a formal (–II) charge to the complex [33c]. This is in accordance with the general equation of the formation of dimolybdate complexes of polyols, as shown in Eq. (1).

\[
C_{n}H_{m}(OH)_{k} + H_{2}Mo_{2}O_{7} \rightleftharpoons \{[(MoO_{2})O][C_{n}H_{m}O_{4}(OH)_{(k-4)}]\}^{2-} + 2 H_{3}O^{+}
\]

(1)

The decrease in the acidity observed on mixing polyols with, for example, ammonium heptamolybdate is about ΔpH ≈ 0.5 [38].

Thus, from all the experimental data available, it follows that the aldoses must enter the catalytically active molybdate complexes in their aldehydrol forms, and this has subsequently been unambiguously proved by ¹H, ¹³C and ⁹⁵Mo NMR
The NMR studies also detected zigzag conformations for the dimolybdate complexes of the C-1 to C-4 moieties of the acyclic, hydrated forms of the C-2, C-3 *threo*-configured aldoses but sickle conformations for those of the C-2, C-3 *erythro*-oriented aldoses. Based on the scheme originally proposed by the authors [20] corrected by these NMR data and applying the strict stereochemical rules for the dimolybdate complexes (briefly, in every dimolybdate complex, two octahedron corners, opposite to both shortest, multiple Mo = O bonds, always being *cis* arranged, are occupied with ligands providing both longest coordination bonds while both single, usually the Mo-O bonds connect the remaining opposite corners of the MoO$_6$ octahedron [27]), the mechanism of the Bílik reaction generally accepted today is represented in Scheme 4.

The hydrated, acyclic form of an aldose complexed by its four adjacent hydroxyl groups, HO-1, HO-2, HO-3, and HO-4, in the tetracentate binuclear molybdate complex 8 undergoes delocalization to give the transient state 9. At this point both the C-2–C-3 and the C-1–C-3 bond, the former one disrupting whilst the latter one is newly formed, are equivalent. Moreover, the process is

**Scheme 4**

8: R = H, CH$_3$, CH$_2$OH, (CHOH)$_n$–CH$_2$OH, etc.
accompanied by a simultaneously occurring dehydration and rehydration of the respective carbon(yl) atoms C-1 and C-2. Thus, the process results in the formation of the molybdate complex of the epimeric aldose. The epialdose, however, in comparison with the starting aldose, has C-1 and C-2 mutually exchanged, together with their substituents (hydrogen atoms and hydroxyl groups). Therefore, the process, if strictly classified, should not be denoted as an epimerization, i.e., the process including the configuration change takes place only at one (C-2) carbon atom, but as a stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangement which, only in cases where all the aldose atoms are not isotopically distinguished, results in the epimerization of the unsubstituted aldoses. As the Bílik reaction utilizes only a catalytic amount of the catalyst (if expressed as dimolybdate, usually 1–2 mol % per aldose), it results in the formation of the thermodynamic equilibrium of the rearranged epimeric aldoses.

2.5 Secondary Process

A close analysis of the reaction mixtures obtained on treatment of any aldopentose or higher aldose with molybdic acid reveals the presence of the complementary, C-3 epimeric pair of aldoses. The amount of these secondary products is however different for each pair of epimers. Under gentle conditions of epimerization, practically no complementary aldoses are formed except in the glucose/mannose homomorphous series [1a,b, 11, 12, 15] and the D-allose/D-altrose interconversions [10]. The lowest energy barrier of the formation of the C-3 epimers in the Bílik reaction has been observed for aldopentoses, where it is practically impossible to reach a thermodynamic equilibrium for any C-2 epimeric pair without contamination by the corresponding C-3 epimers [1a, 8]. Under more forcing reaction conditions involving higher amounts of the catalyst (over 10 mol %) and higher temperatures (over 95 °C), even the thermodynamic equilibria of all the C-2, C-3 diastereoisomers can be reached, as shown with aldopentoses [7] (Scheme 5) or the C-4, C-5 D-erythro aldohexoses [40] (Scheme 6).

The former example has been conveniently applied for the preparation of all D-[U-14C]aldopentoses [7], while the latter enables D-allose and D-altrose to be obtained in interesting yields in one step from cheap D-glucose [40].

On treatment with molybdic acid, in addition to the primary C-2 epimeric products, the C-4, C-5 threo aldoses also similarly provide the complementary C-3 epimers. However, a proportion of these C-2, C-3 diastereoisomers, especially idoses and to some extent guloses and taloses, are transformed into more stable 2-ketoses, namely to sorbosates and tagatoses in the case of hexoses [9] and their 6-deoxy derivatives [6] or to gluco-glyco-2-uloses and manno-glyco-2-uloses in the case of higher aldoses [6, 13]. The formation of these 2-ketoses from their parent aldoses is not associated with the molybdate catalysis and is obviously ascribed to the general acidity [41] of the reaction medium.

All the experimental data strongly suggest that the mechanism of the secondary process that operates in parallel under the conditions of the Bílik reaction may proceed via a transition state consisting of two tricentric C-3–H–C-2 bonds of an aldopyranose bidentately linked via C-3–OH and C-2–OH in a molybdate
Scheme 5. Thermodynamic equilibrium of all D-aldopentoses obtained on treatment of D-[U-14C]arabinose or D-[U-14C]xylose (2 mg, 7.5 µCi) with molybdic acid (2 mg) in water (2 mL) at 98–100°C for 10 and 14 h, respectively [7].

Scheme 6. Reaction equilibrium of the C-4, C-5 D-erythro-hexoses obtained on 2 h treatment of 2 M D-glucose in 0.004 M ammonium heptamolybdate in 0.1 M aqueous acetic acid at 120°C [40].

complex, thus making possible a mutual reversal of configuration at the pertinent carbon atoms, i.e., in a similar manner to that originally suggested for a partially revealed pathway of the primary process [32] (cf. Scheme 3). In spite of this no direct evidence exists of the pathway proposed; observations such as, e.g., the formation of D-(1-13C)gulose, D-(2-13C)idose and D-(2-13C)galactose
from \(\text{D}-(1-^{13}\text{C})\text{talose} \ [20]\), or similarly \(\text{D}-(2-^{13}\text{C})\text{arabinose}, \text{D}-(2-^{13}\text{C})\text{xylose}\) and \(\text{D}-(1-^{13}\text{C})\text{lyxose}\) from \(\text{D}-(1-^{13}\text{C})\text{ribose} \ [23]\) on the one hand, and the formation of \(\text{D}-(1-^{13}\text{C}, 2\text{H})\text{lyxose}\) essentially as the only product from \(\text{D}-(2-^{13}\text{C}, 2\text{H})\text{xylose}\) on the other \ [20], do admit the explanation. Analogously to the reactions that involve proton abstractions or hydride transfers, a significant isotope effect would be expected also for the mutual hydrogen exchange proposed. The substitution of the hydrogen atom with deuterium at C-2 should significantly diminish the reaction rate involving the transfer of the deuterium atom from C-2 to C-3 resulting in failure to form \(\text{D}-(2-^{13}\text{C}, 3-2\text{H})\text{arabinose}\) [and, subsequently, by the primary process, \(\text{D}-(1-^{13}\text{C}, 3-2\text{H})\text{ribose}\)] as expected.

Generally, the mechanism proposed to explain the secondary process includes the aldopyranose bidentate ligand \(\text{11}\) which, after linking in a bidentate molybdate complex via the oxygen atoms of its hydroxyl groups at C-2 and C-3 in the equatorial positions of the \(4\text{C}_1\) conformation of \(\text{D-xylopyranose} \ (\text{11a})\) [alternatively of \(\text{D-glucopyranose} \ (\text{11b})\) or \(\text{D-galactopyranose} \ (\text{11c})\)], adopts a planar structure of its C-4–C-3–C-2–C-1 segment (Scheme 7). In such a half-chair conformation \(\text{H}_5\) of the aldose moiety of complex \(\text{12}\), which is in equilibrium with the conformation \(\text{H}_5\) (13), the parallel, trans-oriented C-3–H and C-2–H bond orbitals efficiently overlap and form two tricentric bonds. In this transition state, intramolecular hydrogen transfer between C-2 and C-3 occurs caus-

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{11} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{MoO}_4 \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{12} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{MoO}_4 \\
\text{13} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{MoO}_4 \\
\end{align*}
\]

Scheme 7

\[
\begin{align*}
a & : \text{R}^1 \quad \text{R}^2 \quad \text{R}^3 \\
b & : \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\
c & : \text{H} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{CH}_2\text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]
ing simultaneous configurational changes on both the carbon atoms, resulting in the formation of the $^1C_4$ conformation of D-arabinopyranose (14a) [alternatively of D-altropyranose (14b) or D-idopyranose (14c)].

The high susceptibility of pentoses to the secondary process, with the proposed interface of the interconversion D-xylopyranose-$^4C_1$ ⇔ D-arabinopyranose-$^1C_4$ between their two epimeric pairs, is probably connected with the conformational readiness of both aldoses for the reaction [42]. This susceptibility is less pronounced for higher aldoses because of a lower population of $^1C_4$ conformers of both D-altropyranose and D-idopyranose when compared with that of D-arabinopyranose.

Other indirect support for the pyranose half-chair structure of the transition state of the secondary process is provided by the behavior of alditols [21] and furanoid tetroses or 5-deoxypentoses [5, 6] under the conditions of the Bílik reaction. The former, which although able to form planar bidentate complexes are without the deformation necessary for the hydrogen exchange, do not undergo any structural change while the latter, sterically much more demanding furanoses (apparently unable to form bidentate molybdate complexes via their trans-oriented 2,3-hydroxyls), do not undergo racemization.

To a very limited extent, the vicinal hydrogen exchange mechanism might operate even within the primary process as originally suggested (Scheme 3). This is supported by the formation of ~0.2% of D-(1-$^{13}$C)glucose [besides the major product, D-(2-$^{13}$C)glucose] from D-(1-$^{13}$C)mannose, or even 1.2% of D-(1-$^{13}$C)arabinose [besides D-(2-$^{13}$C)arabinose] from D-(1-$^{13}$C)ribose [23]. Unfortunately, there are no data available for the formation of such isotopomers from the side of the C-2, C-3 threo aldopyranoses which are much more populated in the form of the C-1, C-2 diequatorial anomers, and thus should be much more susceptible to form such isotopomers by the hydrogen exchange mechanism than the aforementioned C-2, C-3 erythro aldopyranoses.

To suppress the secondary process that leads to undesired isotopomers, which is necessary when preparing regiospecifically isotope-substituted or isotope-labeled aldoses, a combined heptamolybdate-formate resin was developed [23]. Using the resin as a catalyst, the secondary process is practically negligible and can be reduced to < 0.1%.

### 2.6 Other Catalytic Systems Causing Skeletal Rearrangement of Epimeric Aldoses

In addition to molybdic acid, there have been reports of several other catalytic systems that cause mechanistically relative transformations of aldoses involving a 1,2-shift of their carbon skeleton. They include the nickel(II)-ethylenediamine [43] and cobalt(II)-ethylenediamine complexes [44] as well as the calcium(II), strontium(II), lanthanum(III) and neodymium(III) cations in both aqueous and alcoholic alkaline solutions [45, 46]. Unlike the Bílik reaction, all these transformations exploit rather equimolar amounts of the catalysts so that they result in thermodynamic equilibria of the catalytic complexes with the epimeric aldoses. Moreover, due to steric restrictions, the aforementioned alkaline earth and rare earth cations, which form mononuclear tetradeutate complexes with aldoses,
catalyze the carbon-skeleton rearrangement of aldoses with the C-3, C-4 \textit{threo} configuration only. Although no secondary process (viz. a mutual hydrogen exchange between C-2 and C-3 leading to the formation of 3-epimers) analogous to that occurring in the Bílik reaction has been described for the other known catalytic systems, the necessary alkaline medium often brings about the formation of undesired 2-ketoses by the competitive LdB-AvE reaction. In other words, this is the main reason why these 1,2-carbon shift mediators cannot be exploited as real catalysts in the sense of the quantities applied. Due to the distinct restrictions and difficulties none of these alkaline complex catalyzed skeletal rearrangements has been commercialized and all of them are rather of theoretical interest.

3 Application of the Bílik Reaction for the Mutual Interconversion of 2-Ketoses and 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)aldoses

Following the recognition of the unusual carbon-skeleton rearrangement that occurs in the Bílik reaction, new questions have been raised, in particular, whether the carbon atom 1,2-shift is able to transfer substituents other than the hydrogen atoms (i.e. protium, deuterium or tritium) (Scheme 8). This was shown by mechanistic studies with the hydrogen isotopomers of D-glucose (15a; X = $^3$H, Z = H, n = 2) and D-mannose (16a; X = $^3$H, Z = H, n = 2) [32], as well as of D-xylose (15b; X = H, Z = $^2$H, n = 1) and D-lyxose (16b; X = H, Z = $^2$H, n = 1) [20].

An immediately applicable example was the interconversion of 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses predictable from the analysis of the mechanism of the primary process of the Bílik reaction (Scheme 4). However, the primary studies performed with hex-2-uloses [47] and pent-2-uloses [48] did not provide results consistent with those expected according to the mechanism revealed later, as no 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose was detected in the reaction mixtures. Based on the results of the primary studies, as well as on the assumption that the thermodynamic equilibrium of a pertinent 2-ketose and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose might be shifted totally in favor of the former, the investigation of the interconversion was approached from the side of the latter sugar. Some inspiration might be provided also by the analytical studies of the transformation of 2-ketoses to the corresponding 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses catalyzed by nickel(II)-ethylenediamine complexes [49] (see Osanai, this vol.).
3.1 Preliminary Studies

The D-glucose/D-mannose system, the most convenient for such model studies, was chosen again; however, with the necessary modifications. While 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-mannose (16c; X = CH\(_2\)OH, Z = H, \(n = 2\), Scheme 8) is conveniently available via aldolization of 2,3,5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-D-mannose with formaldehyde [50], this is not the case for 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-glucose (15d; X = H, Z = CH\(_2\)OH, \(n = 2\), Scheme 8). Therefore, both 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses were prepared by the addition of nitromethane to D-fructose (17) followed by transformation of the intermediates, epimeric 1-deoxy-2-C-(hydroxymethyl) alditol-1-nitronates 18 and 19 by the Nef reaction (Scheme 9) [51]. In spite of its apparent simplicity, it was the first synthesis of 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses using this sequence. Thus, a 1:1 mixture of the branched-chain aldoses 15d and 16c was obtained in 18% yield.

The individual 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses were obtained after a combined separation of the epimers via their phenylhydrazones followed by chemisorption chromatography on a cation-exchange resin in the Ba\(^{2+}\) form [50]. Then, on treatment with molybdic acid at increased temperature, 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-mannose (16c) rearranged to D-gluco-hept-2-ulose (15c) as expected. Under similar conditions, 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-glucose (15d) was transformed to D-manno-hept-2-ulose (16d). The analysis of the reaction equilibria by \(^1\)H NMR spectroscopy revealed the presence of small quantities of the respective starting branched-chain aldoses 15d (3.5%) and 16c (8%). The same equilibria were also obtained from the side of the model ketoses 15c and 16d. Thus, for example, the equilibrium of the sugars 15c and 16c at their total 2% concentration in a 0.2%
aqueous solution of molybdic acid at 80 °C is obtainable in 1 h from the side of 16c while in 20 min from the side of 15c. This is in accordance with the different reaction rates observed also for the C-2 epimeric aldoses [20, 21], as the sugars with the erythro arrangement of their OH groups at two neighboring (α and β) carbon atoms to the carbonyl carbon atom formed, to a much higher extent, cyclic, catalytically inactive complexes than those with the threo arrangement at the pertinent moiety [39].

The data obtained suggest that conversions of the branched-chain aldoses 15d and 16c to the respective ketoses 15c and 16d are not irreversible but their reaction equilibria are strongly shifted to the side of the ketoses. Thus, between the interconverting pairs of sugars, 15c ⇔ 16c and 16d ⇔ 15d, respective thermodynamic equilibrium ratios of 23:2 and 55:2 were found. If the pairs of sugars 15c and 16c as well as 15d and 16d are considered to be substituted D-glucoses and D-mannoses (cf. Scheme 8), the mutual interconversion within the pairs can be regarded as further structural proof of the mechanism of the Bílik reaction.

3.2 Preparation of 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)aldoses

While 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses of the C-2, C-3 erythro configuration are easily accessible via aldolization of their 2,3-O-alkylidene derivatives with formaldehyde, there is no simple and general method available for the synthesis of their C-2 epimers. The application of the Bílik reaction to 2-ketoses, however, has offered a much more universal method for their synthesis regardless of their stereochemistry.

3.2.1 D-Hamamelose and Other 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)pentoses

D-Hamamelose [2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-ribose, 20], a naturally occurring branched-chain monosaccharide with remarkable biological properties [52], has been synthesized by several, relatively complex procedures [53]. In spite of its poor yield (6.5%), the one-step synthesis of the sugar from D-fructose (17) by the Bílik reaction [54] (Scheme 10) makes the procedure preparatively interesting as the starting sugar can be easily removed by fermentation. The by-product D-sorbose (21), that apparently originates from the secondary process that

![Scheme 10]
operates in parallel, is separable by chemisorption chromatography on a cation-exchange resin in the Ba\(^{2+}\) form. The same thermodynamic equilibrium of D-fructose and D-hamamelose can also be obtained from the side of the branched-chain aldose; however, this reaction takes six times longer.

Addition of four equivalents of boric acid to the starting ketose improves the original 6.5\% yield of D-hamamelose up to 20\% [55]. Thus, the product of the molybdic acid catalyzed rearrangement, D-hamamelose, is apparently being removed from its thermodynamic equilibrium with D-fructose by a competitive complex formation with boric acid.

In a similar manner, L-sorbose, on treatment with a catalytic amount of molybdic acid, equilibrates with its rearranged isomer, 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-L-lyxose, again accompanied by a side product of a secondary process, L-fructose [55]. Analogous co-application of boric acid shifts in this case the thermodynamic yield of 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-L-lyxose from 3\% to a preparatively more interesting 12\%.

Molybdic acid catalyzed isomerization of D-tagatose (without boric acid) provided a 19:1 ratio (as estimated by \(^1\)H NMR spectroscopy) of the ketose and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-xylose. Surprisingly, D-psicose on treatment with molybdic acid under otherwise identical reaction conditions, even after prolonged reaction times, did not lead to the formation of 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-arabinose as expected. The co-application of boric acid, either in this case or in the case of D-tagatose, does not shift the equilibria towards the corresponding 2-C-hydroxymethyl)aldoses.

3.2.1.1 Mechanistic Studies

Regardless of the aforementioned structural-mechanistic considerations (cf. Scheme 8), classical mechanistic studies with two isotopically substituted D-fructoses, namely D-(2-\(^{13}\)C)fructose and D-(3-\(^{13}\)C)fructose, were also performed [54, 55] in order to unambiguously confirm the stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangement of 2-ketoses to 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses and vice versa. The study was also important in respect to gaining more detailed knowledge on the topology of the secondary process which occurs concomitantly with the prevailing primary process of the rearrangement. Thus, after treatment with 0.2\% aqueous molybdic acid at 80 °C for 5 h, the reaction mixture in the first case also contained, in addition to the starting D-(2-\(^{13}\)C)fructose (89\%), D-(2-\(^{13}\)C)hamamelose (6.5\%) and D-(2-\(^{13}\)C)sorbose (2.5\%), and, in the second, D-(1-\(^{13}\)C)hamamelose (7\%) and D-(3-\(^{13}\)C)sorbose (3\%) besides the starting D-(3-\(^{13}\)C)fructose (88\%). The pertinent positions of the \(^{13}\)C isotopic substitution in each isolated sugar were traced by \(^{13}\)C NMR spectroscopy (Fig. 1) [54, 55].

Product analysis revealed that the branching C-2 atom of D-hamamelose, formed on treatment with molybdic acid, was the former C-2 atom of D-fructose, while the C-1 atom of D-hamamelose was originally the C-3 atom of the ketose. Isotope tracing tracked the origin of the only minor product, D-sorbose, to a different process, as both of its topologically most significant carbon atoms, namely C-2 and C-3, remain at the same positions as in the starting D-fructose.
If this D-sorbose had come from a process similar to the LdB-AvE reaction, then such a final reaction mixture would also have to contain other 2-ketoses and 3-ketoses. The absence of these complementary ketoses suggests that D-sorbose is formed from D-fructose by a secondary process also catalyzed with molybdic acid, similarly to D-xylose from D-arabinose and vice versa. The other direction of the interconversion by the secondary process of both 2-ketoses was shown above by the isolation of L-fructose as the only minor product [besides the main product 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-L-lyxose] from a reaction mixture obtained on treatment of L-sorbose with molybdic acid.

Based on the results of studies with isotopically substituted D-fructoses, and following the stereochemical rules of molybdate complexes, the mechanism of the molybdic acid catalyzed mutual interconversion of 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses (referred to as the primary process) [54, 55] is shown in Scheme 11.

The ketohydrol form of a 2-ketose (exemplified as D-fructose) enters the catalytically active tetridentate dimolybdate complex 22 which stereospecifically

Fig. 1A–F. The 75.5 MHz 1H-decoupled 13C NMR spectra in aqueous solution at 40°C of the starting 13C isotope substituted compounds (A, B) and the synthetic products (C-F) obtained from isomerization reactions catalyzed with molybdic acid. D-(2-13C)hamamelose (C) and D-(2-13C)sorbose (E) obtained from D-(2-13C)fructose (A); D-(1-13C)hamamelose (D) and D-(3-13C)sorbose (F) obtained from D-(3-13C)fructose (B) (Reprinted from Carbohydrate Research, Vol. 319, Zuzana Hricovíniová-Bíliková, Miloslav Hricovín, Mária Petrusová, Anthony S. Serianni, Ladislav Petruš, Stereospecific molybdic acid-catalyzed isomerization of 2-hexuloses to branched-chain aldoses, Pages 38–46, Copyright 1999, with permission from Elsevier Science.)
rearranges via the transient state 23 into the corresponding complex 24 of the aldehydrol form of such a 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose (exemplified as D-hamamelose) which has an opposite configuration at C-2 compared to that at C-3 of the starting 2-ketose. This is the result of a new C-2–C-4 bond formation with concomitant cleavage of the original C-3–C-4 bond (the numbering according to 22) while all the crucial atoms and their substituents of the four-carbon sugar moiety involved in the rearrangement remain fixed in space due to the chelation in the dimolybdate complex. The fixed topology of the atoms with their bond recombinations also results in differences in the conformational shapes of the interconverting species. Thus, while the four-carbon moiety of the starting D-fructose linked in the active complex 22 has a zigzag (or anti-periplanar) conformation, that of the product D-hamamelose in complex 24 is changed to a sickle (or syn-periplanar) one. In accordance with the stereochemistry of the molybdate complexes, both 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses should be complexed in the resulting complexes as the hydrates of their acyclic forms. In the molybdenum coordination octahedrons, two of the four hydroxyls, formally esterified, are placed opposite the bridging Mo-O-Mo oxygen atom, while the other two hydroxyl groups are coordinated to both molybdenum atoms and constitute, together with the bridging Mo-O-Mo oxygen atom, the joint triangular wall of the two molybdenum coordination octahedrons of the dimolybdate
complex. The coordinated OH groups are located opposite to all the four multiple Mo=O bonds (actually of the multiplicity two and a half, resulting in a stable, 18-electron outer layer) in both, by the octahedrons fused at three corners and release their acidic protons to give a formal (–II) charge to the complex.

The mechanism of the secondary process (Scheme 12) that accompanies the molybdic acid catalyzed mutual interconversion of 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses is illustrated as the interconversion of d-fructopyranose (25) and d-sorbo.pyranose (28). The most probable structure of the active complex that catalyzes the secondary process is a dimolybdate of a joint-cornered dioc-tahedron structure such as, for example, K₂[[MoO₂(C₂O₄)H₂O]₂O] [24]. It has been postulated [54] that, in such complexes, the 2-ketoses are involved as the bidentate hexopyran-2-ulose ligands exploiting their trans-arranged C-3–OH and C-4–OH hydroxyl groups (25, 28).

In accordance with the stereocchemical rules, the hydroxyl group positioned opposite the bridging Mo-O-Mo oxygen atom (i.e., to the connecting corner of both octahedrons) is formally esterified, while the other hydroxyl group is coordinated and releases its acidic proton. Only the planar bidentate ligands that enable a maximum overlap with the d orbitals of the molybdenum(VI) atom are known to be components of stable complexes [27]. Apparently, the complex force field causes such a planar deformation of the C-2–C-3–C-4–C-5 segments of the complexed hexopyran-2-uloses 26 and 27 in their respective ⁶H₀ and ⁰H₀ conformations. Thus, the respective C-3–H and C-4–H bonds (numbering

Scheme 12
according to 25), originally trans-diaxially oriented, become strongly deformed, sticking below and above the plane of the sp$^2$-rehybridized carbon atoms C-3 and C-4 in an antiparallel manner, enabling them to efficiently overlap thus creating two tricentric bonds. The mediation of the mutual hydrogen atom exchange between C-3 and C-4, that occurs simultaneously below and above the plane, results in configurational changes at both carbon atoms, and, hence, in the formation of $D$-sorbopyranose (28) from $D$-fructopyranose (25) and vice versa (Scheme 12).

Although not yet proven, some important co-functioning during the secondary process must come also from the hemiacetal carbon atom, as no configurational changes in cyclitols such as, for example, myo-inositol, are observed under the conditions of the Bílik reaction [56].

To summarize the mechanistic and structural studies with hex-2-uloses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)pentoses performed under the conditions of the Bílik reaction, the following conclusion can be made. Molybdic acid catalyzes two types of interconversions between the sugars shown in Scheme 13. $D$-Fructose (17), $D$-sorbose (21) and $D$-tagatose (29) when treated with the catalyst are subjected to highly stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangements to produce thermodynamic equilibrium mixtures with the respective 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-$D$-ribose ($D$-hamamelose, 20), 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-$D$-lyxose (30), and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-$D$-xylose (31). (For simplicity, all the sugars are represented in their acyclic non-hydrated forms in spite of which some of their interconversions proceed in the acyclic hydrated structures, while others proceed in cyclic hemiacetal ones. All of the interconversion relationships are schematically represented in the $D$ series, despite the fact that some of them were experimentally performed with the $L$ series.) Probably because of extensive formation of unproductive com-
plexes [57], D-psicose (32) is not transformed to the expected 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-arabinose (33); the rearrangement, however, very probably proceeds from the side of 33 and remains to be studied. In addition to interconversions of the first type, referred to as the primary process, a competitive interconversion of a second type occurs, namely between ketoses 21 and 22. This process is referred to as the secondary process and is accompanied not by a carbon-skeleton rearrangement but by an intramolecular hydrogen exchange.

3.2.2 2-C-(Hydroxymethyl)tetroses

The mutual interconversion between pent-2-uloses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-aldoses has been studied from the side of the former sugars only. The process has been exploited for the preparation of 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-erythrose (35) from D-xylulose (34) (Scheme 14) and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-threose (37) from D-ribulose (36) [58] (Scheme 15). The thermodynamic equilibria of the respective interconverting pairs of sugars, 34 ↔ 35 and 36 ↔ 37, are 10:1 and 11:1, respectively. As both pairs can be efficiently separated on a column of cation-exchange resin (Ba^{2+} form), the branched-chain aldoses 35 and 37 can be obtained in 7 and 6% yield, respectively. The co-application of boric acid increases the yield of 35 up to 14%; however, the yield of 37 decreases to only 3% [58].

![Scheme 14](image1)

![Scheme 15](image2)
3.3 Preparation of 2-Ketoses

In cases where a 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose is easily available via base-catalyzed aldolization of a 2,3-O-alkylidene-aldofuranose with formaldehyde, the carbon-skeleton rearrangement operating in the Bílik reaction can also be conveniently exploited for preparation of 2-ketoses. The method is especially advantageous for synthesis of heptuloses and octuloses as (1) in special cases the 2-C-hydroxymethyl side chain construction is simpler than the classical aldose chain elongations, and (2) the equilibrium of a 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldose and its corresponding 2-ketose in the Bílik interconversion is much more favorably shifted to the side of the latter sugar (always >85%) than the LdB-AvE transformation of the pertinent unbranched aldose.

3.3.1 Sedoheptulose

Sedoheptulose (D-altro-heptulose) is a natural ketose that plays an important role in metabolism. Its content in natural sources, however, rarely exceeds 1% [59] so that its synthesis rather than its isolation is preferred. Until now, biochemical and biotechnological methods have been exploited to perform the synthesis [60].

D-Allose can be easily obtained in a one-step reaction with 10% yield from D-glucose via the secondary process of the Bílik reaction [40], and, hence, also 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-allose (40) via base-catalyzed aldolization of 2,3:5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-D-allofuranose (38) with formaldehyde followed by deprotection of the aldol 39 [60, 61].

Molybdic acid treatment of the branched-chain aldose 40 results in a 1:12 equilibrium mixture with sedoheptulose (41), a proportion of which is present in the form of the 2,7-anhydro derivative 42. For isolation purposes, 41 is completely converted in 0.5 M H$_2$SO$_4$ into the commercially available form of the sugar 42 (Scheme 16), which is thus obtained in 63% yield (in relation to the starting 40).
3.3.2
\textit{d-glycero-d-ido-Octulose}

This mysterious ketose occurs in \textit{Craterostigma plantagineum}, a member of a small group of drough-tolerant higher plants. The free sugar represents almost 90\% of the carbohydrates present in the fully hydrated leaves of the plant. A peculiarity of \textit{d-glycero-d-ido-octulose} is its metabolic conversion into sucrose when dehydration occurs. The process is reversible as, on rehydration, sucrose is converted back to the octulose. This exceptional drought adaptation has attracted attention, and pertinent structural and mechanistic studies have been undertaken on the ketose isolated from its natural source [62].

The synthetic design based on the molybdic acid catalyzed carbon-skeleton rearrangement of the branched chain aldose as applied above to prepare sedoheptulose has also been exploited for the synthesis of \textit{d-glycero-d-ido-octulose} [63]. The necessary branched-chain aldose \textit{45}, 2-\textit{C}-(hydroxymethyl)-\textit{d-glycero-d-gulo-heptose}, was obtained by the potassium carbonate catalyzed aldolization of the \textit{d-glycero-d-gulo-heptose} derivative \textit{43} [64], which has an anchored configuration at C-2, by 2,3-\textit{O}-isopropylidenation with formaldehyde and by subsequent deprotection of the aldolization product \textit{44}.

Molybdic acid treatment of \textit{45} resulted in a 1:7 equilibrium mixture of the starting sugar and \textit{d-glycero-d-ido-octulose} (\textit{46}) (Scheme 17). Under the condit-
tions of the interconversion, ketose 46 is partly transformed and in 0.5 M H$_2$SO$_4$ completely transformed into its 2,7-anhydrofuranose and 2,7-anhydropyranose forms 47 and 48 in a ratio of 2:1.

Scheme 17

3.4 Conclusions

The extension of the unique, stereospecific carbon-skeleton rearrangement of epimeric aldoses that occurs during the Bílik reaction to produce 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)aldoses has provided new, one-step preparative procedures of representatives of both these groups of reducing sugars by simple mutual interconversions. In accordance with the epimeric aldoses ratio representation of the Bílik reaction equilibria, the pertinent ratios of the interconverting sugars at their thermodynamic equilibria are as follows:

- D-Xylulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-erythrose 10:1 [58]
- D-Ribulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-threose 11:1 [58]
- D-Fructose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-ribose (D-hamamelose) 14:1 [54]
- L-Sorbose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-L-lyxose 32:1 [55]
- D-Tagatose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-xyllose 19:1 [55]
- D-gluco-Hept-2-ulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-mannose 23:2 [51b]
- D-manno-Hept-2-ulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-glucose 55:2 [51b]
- D-altro-Hept-2-ulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-allose 12:1 [61]
- D-glycero-d-ido-Oct-2-ulose/2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-D-glycero-d-gulo-heptose 7:1 [63]
The mechanistic studies with isotopically substituted D-fructoses have unambiguously proved the topology of the carbon-skeleton rearrangement that occur during the interconversions, namely that they proceed in such a manner that the carbonyl, i.e. C-1 of the product branched-chain aldose, is the former C-3 carbon atom of the starting 2-ketose, while C-2 of the product sugar is the C-2 carbon atom of the starting ketose. In addition to this unambiguous regioselectivity, the process is also strictly stereospecific, as the configurations at the neighboring carbonyl carbon atoms of the interconverting sugars are opposite.

A competitive interconversion of the diastereoisomeric C-3, C-4 threo 2-ketoses proceeds via a different mechanism which is very probably a mutual hydrogen exchange between the C-3 and C-4 carbon atoms.

4 Perspectives

The development of knowledge concerning the mechanism of the Bílík reaction of epimeric aldoses and its understanding has initiated the utilization of the reaction for the mutual interconversion of 2-ketoses and 2-C-(hydroxymethyl)-aldoses. We are convinced that exploitation of this unique carbohydrate reaction is still in its infancy and that further, significant advances can be expected in the field if the right parameters of the reaction are properly extrapolated. There is also justification for investigating whether the reaction or similar transformations take place in Nature [65], as it is most definitely apparent that this unique chemical-bond rearrangement, the result of an immense force field, does not only take place in molybdate complexes of reducing sugars. In any event, however, the results of such studies as, for example, the transformations of 1-deoxy-2-ketoses or 3-ketoses under the conditions of the Bílík reaction, can be expected in the very near future.

Acknowledgements. Preparation of this chapter was supported by grant No. 2/7144 of the Slovak Academy of Sciences and by the sponsorship of CMS Chemicals.

5 References

1. (a) Bílik V (1972) Chem Zvesti 26:183; (b) Bílik V (1972) ibid 26:187; (c) Bílik V (1972) ibid 26:372
2. (a) Lobry de Bruyn CA, Alberda van Ekenstein W (1895) Recl Trav Chim Pay-Bas 14:156; (b) Lobry de Bruyn CA, Alberda van Ekenstein W (1895) ibid 14:203
4. Bílik V (personal communication)
18. Angyal SJ (personal communication)
34. Atovmyan LO, Tkachev VV, Shishova TG (1972) Dokl AN SSSR 205:609
53. (a) Ho PT (1979) Tetrahedron Lett 19:1623; (b) Overend WG, Williams NR (1965) J Chem Soc 3446; (c) Burton JS, Overend WG, Williams NR (1965) ibid 3433
56. Petruš L unpublished results
63. Hricovíniová Z, Hricovíni M, Petruš L unpublished results
64. Brimacombe JS, Tucker LCN (1968) J Chem Soc (C) 562
Erratum

Please find below the correct versions of Scheme 10 on page 29 and Scheme 13 on page 34.

Scheme 10 (p. 29)

Scheme 13 (p. 34)
Nickel(II)-Catalyzed Rearrangements of Free Sugars

S. Osanai

Department of Applied Chemistry, Faculty of Science and Technology, Keio University, Kohoku-ku, Yokohama 223–8522, Japan
E-mail: osanai@appc.keio.ac.jp

To the memory of Sadao Yoshikawa, Ph. D. (1925 – 1998)

C-2 Epimerization of aldoses and ketoses catalyzed by the Ni(II) complex is described. Both epimerization and the preparation of side-chained sugars proceed in the ternary nickel complex through stereospecific rearrangement of the carbon skeleton, that is, from (1-13C)-D-glucose into (2-13C)-D-mannose and from (2-13C)-D-fructose into (2-13C)-D-hamamelose, and vice versa. The structure of the ligand in the complex plays an important role during the epimerization. The epimerization proceeds more smoothly in both methanolic and aqueous solutions with a more hydrophobic ligand such as N,N'-higher alkylated ethylenediamine. Due to their ability to self-aggregate in water, the organized metallomicelles can provide an appropriate reaction system for the epimerization of aldoses. The chirality of the ligand contributes to the shift of the equilibrium between the two C-2 epimers.

Keywords: C-2 Epimerization, Hydroxymethylated sugar, Stereospecific rearrangement, Nickel/diamine complex, Metallomicelle, Chirality of ligand

1 Introduction .................................................. 44

2 Principal Aspects of the C-2 Epimerization of Aldoses .................. 45
2.1 Epimerization by Reversible Enolization .................................. 45
2.2 Epimerization by Nickel(II)/Diamine ..................................... 46

3 Influence of the Structure of the Ternary Nickel Complex ................. 51
3.1 Influence of the Diamine Ligand ......................................... 52
3.2 Influence of the Configuration of the Sugar ............................ 57
3.3 Influence of the Chirality of the Diamine Ligand ....................... 59

4 Preparation of 2-Hydroxymethylaldoses from Ketoses ..................... 63

5 Epimerization by a Hydrophobic Nickel Complex in Aqueous Solution ......................... 67
5.1 Progress of the Epimerization ........................................... 68
5.2 Formation of Metallomicelles ............................................. 72
5.3 Catalytic Activity of the Amphiphilic Complex System ................ 73

6 References .................................................... 74
1 Introduction

If sugars are regarded as polyhydroxycarbonyl compounds, a new aspect is developed by observing how hydroxyl groups are positioned in these molecules. Although the individual hydroxyl groups are simple ones, their diversity in steric relationships seems to govern the complexity of the sugar chemistry.

It is well known that sugars can be complexed with metals in a wide variety of ways according to the difference of metals and structures of the ligands, such as aldoses and ketoses or mono- and polysaccharides. These subjects have been previously reviewed [1, 2].

The multiformity due to the slight differences in the stereochemical and electronic adaptabilities provides various subjects with regard to the coordination mode with metals. It is a possible that significant and effective action is shown for the recognition of the sugars. For these reasons, the interaction of carbohydrates with metals has been an attractive subject, and, therefore, it has been extensively studied in connection with various fields of chemistry for a long time.

In particular, the interaction between transition metals and sugars provides many kinds of applications. They are observed not only in reactions such as catalytic chemistry [3–9], coordination and chelation chemistry [10–15], but also in analytical chemistry, such as during electrophoresis [16–18], NMR studies [19–22], and in many other fields [23–29].

For example, aldoses are converted to their sugar acids with high selectivity in the presence of Pt or Rh during the dehydrogenation reaction [3, 4]. In an alkaline solution, the reducing sugars undergo the Cannizzaro reaction with assistance from Ni or Pt [5–7]. In every case, it is recognized that coordinational interaction between the metal and the sugar plays an important role during the reaction.

As mentioned above, the coordinating behavior of nickel(II) with carbohydrates has been studied in detail [30–38]. Yoshikawa and Yano clarified that the nickel complexes that coordinate ethylenediamine have the ability to isomerize aldoses into their corresponding epimers at C-2 along with stereospecific rearrangement [39, 40, 43]. They applied the coordinating abilities of nickel, diamine and sugar in a sophisticated reaction, and established a distinct reaction system that is different from the traditional “enediol” epimerization of aldoses by alkaline solution.

Based on these findings, we were encouraged to develop further the potential of this reaction system. In this chapter, a survey of the conditions of epimerization by nickel complexes is provided. It should be mentioned that the structures of the ethylenediamines are not the only important factors in their complexation during a epimerization with stereospecific rearrangement; the importance of hydrophobicity of the nickel complex must also be stressed when the reactions are carried out in an aqueous solution and not in methanol. This suggests an important new concept concerning the effects of aggregation of metal complexes in addition to the influence of the chirality of the ligand diamine.
2 Principal Aspects of the C-2 Epimerization of Aldoses

2.1 Epimerization by Reversible Enolization

It is well known that aldoses are susceptible to epimerization along with isomerization under alkaline conditions. The equilibrium between glucose, mannose, and fructose in an alkaline media is the best-known example of such a case. This results in the interconversion of two aldoses and the corresponding constitutionally isomeric ketose is an equilibrium mixture of the three [41]. An aldose is
partially converted via a 1,2-enediol intermediate. The mechanism involves abstraction of a proton \( \alpha \) to the carbonyl group. Subsequent migration of electrons leads to an ionized enediol, as shown in Fig. 1. The ratios of C-2 epimers in the equilibrium are shown and they are estimated from the thermodynamic equilibrium \[2\]. The results are due to the reversible enolation that is well known as the “Lobry de Bruyn–Alberda van Ekenstein (LdB-AvE) rearrangement” (see Angyal, this vol.).

According to our work \[42\], when glucose and mannose are treated with 66.7 mM of aqueous NaOH solution at 65 °C for a period as short as even 5 min, the composition of the products Glc/Man/Fru are 74:3:23 and 4:87:9, respectively. The corresponding ketose, i.e. fructose, was preferentially formed rather than the corresponding epimers, mannose and glucose.

In these isomerization and epimerization reactions, as the mechanism shows, the carbon sequence of the sugar is held unchanged, that is, C-1 of glucose is C-1 of the epimerized mannose and fructose, respectively. As shown in Fig. 2 \[42\], this is proved by the \( ^{13} \)C NMR spectrum. In this study, glucose and mannose whose C-1 carbons had been substituted with \( ^{13} \)C were used as the starting substrates. They are denoted as 1*-Glc and 1*-Man, respectively.

2.2 Epimerization by Nickel(II)/Diamine

In an extensive series of studies, Yoshikawa, Yano and co-workers have confirmed that various kinds of aldose can be complexed with nickel and amino compounds such as diamines and amino acid in a methanolic solution \[43\]. They studied the nickel(II) complexes coordinating \( N \)-glycosides derived from diamine and monosaccharide. The structure of the complex was determined from three-dimensional X-ray data \[43d\]. Their further studies elucidated that aldoses can be epimerized by reaction systems containing a nickel/diamine complex. This novel epimerization proceeds through an alternative mechanism that is definitely distinct from the epimerization mechanism by reversible enolization that was introduced in Sect. 2.1. It results in the formation of an equilibrium mixture of the two epimers. According to their study \[39\], three significant peculiarities of this epimerization are:

1. The reaction involves an exchange of C-1 and C-2 atoms by inversion of the C-1–C-2 fragment in the carbon skeleton.
2. As an active catalyst, a nickel complex composed of a balanced coexistence of nickel(II) and diamine is indispensable for this epimerization.
3. The free C-1 carbonyl group and the C-4 hydroxyl group are essential for the epimerization. This is ascertained by the fact that methyl glycosides (methyl \( \alpha-D \)-glucopyranoside and methyl \( \alpha-D \)-mannopyranoside) and 4-O-substituted disaccharides (D-lactose and D-cellobiose) were not epimerized under conditions where simple pyranoses and furanoses are able to undergo epimerization.

A \( ^{13} \)C NMR study using enriched D-glucose and EXAFS (extended X-ray absorption fine structure) analysis revealed that the reaction proceeds via an interme-
Nickel(II)-Catalyzed Rearrangements of Free Sugars

Fig. 2a, b. $^{13}$C NMR spectrum (22.5 MHz) of the product mixture derived from $1^*$-glucose [(1-$^{13}$C)Glucose] (a) and $1^*$-mannose (b) with NaOH (66.7 mM). The $^{13}$C NMR data are shown in Table 1.
C-2 epimerization of aldoses by a nickel complex

| 1-13C Glucose | 2-13C Mannose | Not obtainable |

Fig. 3. C-2 epimerization of aldoses by a nickel complex

Intermediate Ternary Complex
(Ni/Diamine/Sugar)

R: Aldohexose -CH(OH)CH(OH)CH₂OH Aldopentose -CH(OH)CH₂OH

Fig. 4. Mechanism of the epimerization by a nickel complex
The epimerization and the resulting product analysis were carried out in the following ways [44]. Scheme 1 summarizes the actual processes of the epimerization. Aldose (180 mg, 1.0 mmol, 1 equiv for glucose) was added to a methanolic solution (15 mL) of NiCl$_2$·6H$_2$O (1 mmol) and ethylenediamine (2 mmol). This solution was incubated for 15 min at 65°C with stirring. The mixture was then kept at pH 6.5 with 1 M HCl for 0.5 h at room temperature. Samples of the mixture were adjusted to pH 7 and de-ionized by consecutive use of a cation-exchange resin (Dowex 5W×8, H$^+$ form) and an anion-exchange resin (Dowex 2×8, HCO$_3^-$ form). After eluting 500 mL of water through the resin columns, evaporation of the eluent left a mixture of unreacted and epimerized sugars. Samples for GLC analysis were prepared by trimethylsilylation of the free sugars and injected using a Hamilton Model 7001. A GL Science Model GC-380 instrument obtained GLC analysis data with a FID (flame-ionization detector). A capillary column (0.25 mm ID × 25 m, OV-1 bonded) was set at 190°C isothermally with the injector temperature higher by 50°C than the column temperature. Under a given set of operating conditions, the retention time served as a method for qualitative identification.

Fortunately, the epimerization by the Ni(II) complex proceeds intelligibly and quantitatively. Reaction mixtures contain only two epimers including unreacted

![Fig. 5. $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of the product mixture obtained from 1*-glucose with Ni$^{2+}$ and 1,1,1',1'-en](image)
substrate aldose. An ambiguous sugar mixture or any amines derived from the catalyst are not detected during the reaction. Consequently, complete interpretation has been formulated without difficulty based on an assignment of NMR spectra and estimation of GLC charts of the products. A representative GLC chart is shown in Fig. 6. Samples are a mixture of α- and β-anomers. Retention times of the product sugars were in fair agreement with those of the authentic glucose and mannose.

Bilik, Petruš and co-workers [45], as well as Heyes, Serianni and colleagues [46], have thoroughly investigated closely related reactions. Epimerization and isomerization of carbohydrates were studied using molybdate ions in a mild acidic medium (see Petruš, Petrušová and Hricovíniová, this vol.).

Yano and Yoshikawa examined the C-2 epimerization of carbohydrates using various metal ions and N-substituted diamines, in order to elucidate the role of the metal center and the diamine component [40]. Among the metal ions studied, only Ni²⁺, Co²⁺, Ca²⁺ and Sr²⁺ promoted C-2 epimerization of aldoses. The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to the procedure shown in Scheme 1, except for the type of metal ions. When H₂MoO₄ (1 equiv) was used as the metal center, C-2 epimerization did not occur in this short reaction time. The reaction using Ca²⁺ proceeds slowly compared with that using Ni²⁺, but this has advantages for practical use. Yanagihara confirmed that Ca²⁺ possesses a similar ability to that of Ni²⁺ [42, 47]. The reaction did not proceed via an enediol but by carbon–carbon bond migration within the Ca²⁺ complex.

The metal ions Ni²⁺, Co²⁺, Ca²⁺ and Sr²⁺ are known to have a strong affinity for carbohydrates, so it is assumed that a certain interaction or complexa-
Influence of the Structure of the Ternary Nickel Complex

We know that functional groups are commonly the major factors controlling the reaction system. The reaction mechanism shown in Fig. 4 suggests that the intermediate ternary complex, nickel/diamine/sugar, governs the epimerization. It indicates that aldoses cannot be epimerized by a nickel ion or ethylenediamine alone. Formation of a ternary complex comprising of metal, sugar, and a diamine derivative is indispensable and a minimum requirement for the epimerization. We have carried out experiments to clarify whether an amine-type base
possesses the ability to epimerize aldoses. Amine is one of the representative organic bases. If it works as a base like sodium hydroxide, epimerization of aldoses will take place by the LdB-AvE rearrangement through an ionized enediol. When glucose and mannose are treated with amine only, each aldose remains perfectly unchanged. Similarly, aldoses cannot be epimerized by an aqueous solution of NiCl₂ alone. This shows how important the simultaneous presence of nickel and diamine is. Experimental results describe that the epimerization systems rely heavily on mutual interactions between the three components in terms of the stability of the ternary complex. A very important observation of its chemistry is that the steric hindrance is strongly dependent on the nature and arrangement of atoms attached to the amino group. The coordination would normally proceed in the direction of the most stable form, and, consequently, the coordinating property determines the products as well as the equilibrium between the two epimers.

Structural effects of the complex on reactivity are divided into two categories: those of the diamines and those of the aldoses. Here, they are considered in terms of their epimerizing activity.

3.1 Influence of the Diamine Ligand

Firstly, the influence of the amine structure should be considered. The structure of the diamine ligand is as significant as that of the sugar as it coordinates to nickel. We place emphasis on developing new ligands that fit formation of the ternary complexes. How much of the epimerized aldose will be obtained from a starting sugar will depend on the stability of the intermediate ternary complex.

In order to develop a suitable catalytic system for nickel/diamine complex assisted epimerization of aldoses, various kinds of diamines were prepared and their influences on epimerization studied [44a, c]. One of the most effective chemical alterations is N-alkylation of ethylenediamine. Due to the variety of alkyl chain lengths and degree of alkylation around nitrogen atoms, the stability of the complexes should be profoundly changed according to the steric interactions between the sugar and the ligand in the complex.

The effects of ligand structure, such as N-alkylated chain length, degree of N-substitution, and the distance between the two amino groups, that is, methylenediamine (mn), ethylenediamine (en), trimethylenediamine (tn) and some kinds of polymethylenediamine (bn, hn), were extensively studied. In addition, ethylenediamine derivatives containing ether linkages and polyamines such as triamine and tetramine are also mentioned. Scheme 2 depicts the relationships between the abbreviations and the structure of representative ligands studied in this work.

Firstly, mn, en, tn, bn and hn denote methylenediamine, ethylenediamine, tri-, tetra- and hexamethylenediamine, respectively. The numbers before en and tn refer to the number of carbons in the N- or N'-alkylated groups. For example, 4-en and 1,1',10'-en signify N-butylenediamine and N,N,N'-trimethyl-N'-decylethylenediamine, respectively. Ph denotes a phenyl group. Similarly, N,N'-
Dioctyltrimethylenediamine is abbreviated as 8,8'-tn. Ethylenediamine derivatives indicated in parentheses possess ether linkages in their alkyl groups (Table 3). The symbol (2–2–2–3) means that there are three ether linkages, which are expressed with the aid of hyphens. They connect ethyl (2), ethylene (2), and trimethylene (3) groups through the ether oxygen atoms $[\text{C}_2\text{OC}_2\text{OC}_2\text{OC}_3^-]$. Amines with $[\ ]$ denote polyamines containing more than three amino groups. Numbers in $[\ ]$ show the carbon number between two amino groups, that is, $[2,3,2]$ means $\text{NH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH}_2$. Numbers in front of $[\ ]$ denote the carbon number of the alkyl group bonded to each of two terminal primary amino groups.

In general, recoveries of the total yields of epimerized and unepimerized sugars are quantitative. They vary between 90 and 100% in every experiment carried out under the conditions mentioned in Scheme 1. Tables 2 and 3 summarize the epimerization carried out by nickel complexes coordinating the various kinds of diamines mentioned above. Run 1 eloquently states that the existence of nickel along with ethylenediamine is indispensable for the epimerization using this reaction system. Further, ethylenediamine must be alkylated with an appropriate chain length. The catalytic activities of the complex coordinating non-substituted ethylenediamine are negligibly small, as shown in run 2.

As runs 8–13 in Table 2 show, some diamine ligands fit the purpose of the epimerization under consideration here very well. The complex composed of nickel and $N,N'$-dialkylethylenediamine is expected to catalyze the conversion of aldohexoses into their corresponding C-2-epimers with a high degree of specificity. On the other hand, the catalytic activity of $N,N'$-dialkylethylenediamine is extremely low. For some $N,N,N'$-trialkyl-substituted ethylenediamines, every li-
Table 2. Epimerization of glucose and mannose by nickel complexes of ethylenediamine derivatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run</th>
<th>Ligand (cf. Scheme 2)</th>
<th>Conversion (%) from glucose</th>
<th>Conversion (%) from mannose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Glc</td>
<td>Man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1-en</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4-en</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1,1-en</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,4-en</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1,1'-en</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2,2'-en</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,4'-en</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4,4'-en</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>8,8'-en</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>12,12'-en</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>14,14'-en</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>18,18'-en</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ph,Ph'-en</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1,1,1'-en</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>1,1,4'-en</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>1,4,1'-en</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>1,4,4'-en</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>4,4,1'-en</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>4,4,4'-en</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-en</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>1,1,1',4'-en</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>1,1,4',4'-en</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>1,4,1',4'-en</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>1,4,1',4'-en</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>4,4,4',4'-en</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>tn</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>4-tn</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>8-tn</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>12-tn</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>4,4-tn</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>8,8-tn</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>12,12-tn</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>4,4'-tn</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>8,8'-tn</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>12,12'-tn</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-tn</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-mn</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-en</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-tn</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-bn</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>1,1,1',1'-hn</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nickel(II)-Catalyzed Rearrangements of Free Sugars

Table 3. Epimerization of glucose and mannose by nickel complexes of polyamine derivatives containing ether linkages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run</th>
<th>Ligand (cf. Scheme 2)</th>
<th>Conversion (%) from glucose</th>
<th>Conversion (%) from mannose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Glc</td>
<td>Man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>4-Amine (n-butylamine)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>4,4-Amine (di-n-butylamine)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>8-Amine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>8,8-Amine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>12-Amine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>12,12-Amine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Ethanolamine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>(12–3)(12–3)′-en</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>(8–3)(8–3)′-en</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>(4–3)(4–3)′-en</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>(2–3)(2–3)′-en</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>(2–2–3)(2–2–3)′-en</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>(6–2–3)(6–2–3)′-en</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>(2–2–2–3)(2–2–2–3)′-en</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>(2–2)(2–2)′-en</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>(2–2)(2–2)(2–2)′(2–2)′-en</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>(0–2)(0–2)′-en</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,2]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,2,2]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,3,2]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,4,2]</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,6,2]</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>12,12′-[3,2,3]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>12,12′-[2,2,2,2]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>12,1,12-[2,2,2]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Cyclene</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gand tested provides an excellent reaction system except for the ligands possessing two butyl groups at one amino group. Among the tetraalkylated diamines, tetramethylated ethylenediamine (run 22) is the only ligand that shows effective and excellent epimerizing ability. When these effective ligands are used, the final product compositions are almost identical when either D-glucose or D-mannose is used as the starting sugar. This means that the nickel(II) complex coordinating an adequately alkylated diamine promotes epimerization at C-2 of aldoses to provide a near-equilibrium mixture of 2-epimeric aldoses with considerable speed under mild conditions. When the epimerization proceeded smoothly and reached equilibrium, the ratio of the two epimers, Glc/Man, was approx. 60 ± 5:40 ± 5. This equilibrium value lies somewhat on the side of mannose compared with that calculated from the thermodynamic equilibrium state, i.e. 70:30 [48, 49]. Other varieties of epimeric pairs are discussed in more detail in Sect. 3.2.

Table 3 summarizes the epimerization carried out by nickel complexes coordinating monoamines (runs 44–50), ethylenediamines containing ether link-
ages (runs 51–60), and polyamines such as triamine, tetramine, pentamine and cyclic tetramine (runs 61–69).

The introduction of ether oxygen atoms enhances the solubility of the \(N\)-alkylated ethylenediamine. Moreover, the ether linkage exhibits a strong interaction with hydroxyl groups of aldoses. This could have an influence on the preparation of the ternary complex including a steric arrangement of the aldoses. Runs 51–60 give us some information to strengthen this argument [44c]. Ligands used in runs 51 and 52 (Table 3) can be regarded as homologs of \(N,N'\)-didodecylethylenediamine, which is introduced in run 12 in Table 2. Ligand 51 possesses the trimethyleneoxy group inserted between the dodecyl group and the nitrogen atom of ethylenediamine. In ligand 52, an ether oxygen atom is substituted for C-4 of the dodecyl group, dividing the dodecyl group into C\(_8\) and C\(_3\) alkoxy groups. Little epimerization of glucose/mannose resulted when \(N,N'\)-dioctadecylethylenediamine was used as the ligand (run 14). On the other hand, the epimerization proceeded readily when ligand 51, 52 or another ether ethylenediamine was used. Both the increases in epimerization and in the solubility of the complex appear to be due to introduction of the ether linkage in the long hydrophobic alkyl chain.

There is little difference between the ligands 52, 55, and 57 with regard to the epimerization. These three diamines can be considered as polyoxygenated analogs of \(N,N'\)-didodecylethylenediamine. This result indicates that, once the ligand imparts a degree of solubility, the influence of the number of ether linkages of the ligand on epimerization is small, as long as the diamine is an ethylenediamine derivative.

When polyamines which possess more than two amino groups are used as ligands (runs 61–69), the epimerization activity of the corresponding nickel complex is negligible. Ligand 66 (12,12\(^\prime\)-[3, 2, 3]) is similar to ligand 51 but the oxygen atom of the ether group is replaced by nitrogen. Epimerization occurs through incorporation of the aldose into the \(Ni/\text{ethylenediamine}\) complex, that is, the ternary complex formation is prerequisite for epimerization. Ligand 12 (12\(^\prime\)-[3, 2, 3]) is known to complex strongly with \(Ni(II)\), coordinating its four amino groups. This complex is so stable that it will not accept further incorporation of the substrate aldose. A similar state would occur for the ligand (0–2)(0–2)\(^\prime\)-en (run 60), as stated in Fig. 7.

This epimerization system has the further advantage of permitting simple washing to regenerate the ion-exchange resin used for the de-ionization. When ligands containing long alkyl chains are used, the resin may be poisoned because

![Fig. 7. Postulated structures of the tetradendate ligand complex](image-url)
it is not possible to remove the adhesive and viscous alkylethylenediamine by simple washing. In contrast, the ether diamines are readily removed from the used resin by elution with methanol. Equally good results for the epimerization are achieved by using the cleaned, regenerated resin.

These suitable N-alkylated diamine ligands show high levels of epimerization. On the other hand, if an ethylenediamine or its derivative containing one or two free primary amino groups is used as the ligand, the epimerization capacity of the system vanishes.

Where does this difference originate from? Previously, Yano and Yoshikawa et al. prepared and isolated the ternary nickel complex coordinating \( \alpha\)-d-glucosamine and ethylenediamine. Its structure was established by X-ray crystallography [43d]. This experimental fact is of considerable significance when considering epimerization by Ni complexes. It is convenient to imagine that the complex comprising free ethylenediamine and sugar is so stable that it could be isolated. It means that this ternary complex is too stable to accept further bonds for interconversion of the corresponding two epimers.

Looking at it from another angle, it would be feasible to state that there are two prerequisites to accomplish the epimerization of aldoses by a nickel complex. As the first requirement, the Ni(II)/diamine complex must have the ability to incorporate sugar and lead to the ternary complex. In this context, simple diamines such as free ethylenediamine and methylated ones have the potential to produce the ternary complex. As the second prerequisite, the resulting ternary complex must be appropriately unstable to undergo a mutation and a transition in the complex.

No matter how smoothly the ternary complex is produced, when the resulting complex fails to undergo further stereoselective skeleton interconversion of the carbon of C-1 and C-2 in the aldose, the epimerization cannot be realized, as demonstrated in Fig. 4.

Judging from this point of view, some diamine derivatives are confirmed to be fit for the epimerization. Among tetramethylated polymethyleneamines, only the ethylenediamine derivative works as a functional ligand. It is suited for the formation of a cyclic intermediate, through the bond of Ni-N-(C)_n-N-C-O-Ni, as shown in Fig. 4. If the two amino groups are apart by more than three methylene groups, the diamine cannot function as a diamine. It acts as a monoamine and is not able to produce the intermediate needed for a key cyclic complex.

### 3.2 Influence of the Configuration of the Sugar

In Sects. 2.2 and 3.1, the mechanism of this novel, regiospecific rearrangement of epimers such as glucose and mannose, and the influence of the diamine ligands, were clarified. In this section, the influence of the configuration of the sugar on the epimerization, that is, the influence of the position of the hydroxyl groups in aldoses, will be examined. For convenience and consistency, the Ni(II)/1,1,1',1'-en complex was employed as the catalyst for all the experiments listed in Table 4.
We carried out an extensive survey of the C-2 epimerization of various aldoses and ketoses \cite{44b}. Because of the variety of the possible aldose configurations, the stability of the complexes should vary accordingly. In order to understand the effects of configuration on the epimerization of aldoses, a variety of aldohexoses, aldopentoses, and 6-deoxyaldohexose were studied along with four ketoses. The stereospecific and regiospecific rearrangement of these ketoses will be studied in detail in Sect. 4.

We determined the epimerization efficiency of the systems by measuring the amount of epimers as a percentage of the total amount of aldose. Table 4 summarizes the results of the aldose epimerization conducted in the nickel complex system. Losses of the original sugar through the reaction process were small and more than an 85% recovery was readily available in every instance. Table 4 shows that the resultant ratio of a pair of epimers is almost equal, irrespective of which sugar is epimerized. This tendency was observed with all the sugars studied that included aldohexose pairs such as glucose/mannose, galactose/talose and with 6-deoxyaldohexoses (D-quinobose, L-rhamnose), as well as aldopentoses (ribose/arabinose, xylose/lyxose). These results indicate that the nickel complex promotes the C-2 epimerization of aldoses to rapidly provide a near-equilibrium mixture of 2-epimeric aldoses under mild conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run</th>
<th>Substrates</th>
<th>Composition of products (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Glc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>D-Glucose</td>
<td>54 (45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>D-Mannose</td>
<td>52 (34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>D-Galactose</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>D-Talose</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>D-Quinobose</td>
<td>66 (55)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>L-Rhamnose</td>
<td>65 (55)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>D-Arabinose</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>D-Ribose</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>L-Arabinose</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>D-Xylose</td>
<td>41 (49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>D-Lyxose</td>
<td>43 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>L-Xylose</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>L-Lyxose</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[ ]: electrophoretic mobility of sugars \cite{16}; ( ): data from \cite{39}.
These results are discussed in terms of the mutual interaction between nickel and the sugars. Angyal et al. clarified the correlation of the configuration and conformation of sugars with the electrophoretic mobilities in solutions of calcium ions [16]. They concluded from their studies that sugars containing an $ax$-$eq$-$ax$ sequence of three hydroxyl groups in a pyranose-ring, or a $cis$-$cis$ sequence in a five-membered ring, readily form complexes with alkaline earth metal ions [2c]. The complex formation is directly proportional to the electrophoretic mobility.

Some significant similarities are recognized with respect to the coordination of sugars to nickel and mobility, as shown in Table 4. For example, the equilibrium position of D-galactose/D-talose and D-arabinose/D-ribose lies almost in favor of D-talose and D-ribose, respectively, which possess the $ax$-$eq$-$ax$ sequence of three hydroxyl groups at C-1, C-2 and C-3. Therefore, they exhibit a high electrophoretic mobility among the pair of two epimers. This suggests that the more readily formed complex is preferentially present in the reaction system containing the nickel(II) ion (Table 5).

### 3.3 Influence of the Chirality of the Diamine Ligand

As discussed in previous sections, during our studies of the epimerization of free aldoses and ketoses using the Ni(II)/diamine system, it was elucidated that the coordinating state of the complex consisting of the three units, nickel, diamine and sugar, played an important role in this reaction. When the epimerization by the nickel complex was carried out at low temperature, the equilibrium state of the epimerization was successfully controlled using an optically active diamine as the ligand [50]. The objective of this section is to clarify the influence of the chirality of the ligand in the nickel complex during the epimerization and how this difference in optical isomerism affects the equilibrium between the two epimers, glucose and mannose. In addition, the influences of ligand structure, reaction temperature and reaction time on the kinetics and thermodynamics of the reaction are examined.

### Table 5. Complexation of sugars with a nickel ion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sugar</th>
<th>R₁</th>
<th>R₂</th>
<th>R₃</th>
<th>R₄</th>
<th>R₁</th>
<th>R₂</th>
<th>R₃</th>
<th>R₄</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>CH₂OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galactose</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>CH₂OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinobose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>CH₃</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabinose</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>CH₂OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talose</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>CH₂OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhamnose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>CH₃</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribose</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The epimerization and analysis of the reaction mixture were conducted in a manner similar to that described in a previous section, except for the reaction temperature and time. In this study, different kinds of optically active chiral diamines were used as ligands. Diamines considered as ethylenediamine derivatives were chosen as ligands because of their structural similarity to ethylenediamine (en) that had shown the highest epimerizing ability in previous studies. The optically active cyclohexanediamine was obtained by resolution of the diastereomers obtained by the reaction of L-tartaric acid and the primary cyclohexanediamine (chxn) [51]. 2,2'-Chxn was prepared by the N-acetylation of the optically resolved chxn, followed by reduction of the acetyl group. Three other types of ethylenediamine derivatives, 2,2'-Me-en, 2,2'-Bn-en and 2,2'-Ph-en, were synthesized from the amino acids, alanine, phenylalanine and phenylglycine, respectively. The optical purity of the chxn was confirmed by comparison of specific rotations with published values [52]. The results of the epimerization are summarized in Table 6 and Figs. 8 and 9.

As shown in Table 6, in reference to the influence of 2,2'-chxn, it was confirmed that at 65 °C the configuration of the employed ligand diamine had no significant effect on the epimerization. At 30 °C, there were small differences,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run</th>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Chirality of ligands</th>
<th>Solvent, Temp. (°C)</th>
<th>Time (min)</th>
<th>Conv. (%) from glucose</th>
<th>Conv. (%) from mannose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>R,R</td>
<td>MeOH 65</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>55.3</td>
<td>44.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>MeOH, 65</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>54.2</td>
<td>45.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>S,S</td>
<td>MeOH, 65</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>53.3</td>
<td>46.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>R,R</td>
<td>MeOH, 30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>47.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>MeOH, 30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>45.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>S,S</td>
<td>MeOH, 30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>41.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>R,R</td>
<td>MeOH, 0</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>62.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>MeOH, 0</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>45.4</td>
<td>54.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>2,2'-chxn</td>
<td>S,S</td>
<td>MeOH, 0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60.4</td>
<td>39.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2,2'-Me-en</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EtOH, 20</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>47.2</td>
<td>52.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>2,2'-Me-en</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>EtOH, 20</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>50.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>2,2'-Me-en</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>EtOH, 20</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>53.9</td>
<td>46.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>2,2'-Ph-en</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EtOH, 35</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>34.3</td>
<td>65.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>2,2'-Ph-en</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>EtOH, 35</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>55.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>2,2'-Ph-en</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>EtOH, 35</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td>45.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>2,2'-Bn-en</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EtOH, 25</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td>60.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>2,2'-Bn-en</td>
<td>Racemate</td>
<td>EtOH, 25</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td>53.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>2,2'-Bn-en</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>EtOH, 25</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td>45.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 8. Time course of the epimerization at 0°C for Glc and Man with chxn ligands possessing (R,R), (R,S and S,R) as well as (S,S) absolute configurations (Table 6, runs 7–9)

Nickel(II)-Catalyzed Rearrangements of Free Sugars

but the influence of the configuration was not readily apparent. When the reaction was carried out at 0°C, the differences in the rate of epimerization and equilibrium became more distinct.

Figure 8 shows that the epimerization of glucose at 0°C employing chxn with (R,R) configuration was found to give a better yield of the mannose epimer, although a longer time was required to reach equilibrium. When the epimerization reaction was performed with the (S,S)-isomer, a smaller proportion of man-
nose was formed but the reaction required a shorter time to reach equilibrium. Conversely, when mannose was used as the starting compound, the epimerizing activity of the reaction system was specifically stimulated by the \((S,S)\)-isomer. In this particular case, the largest amount of epimer was obtained in the shortest time. Not surprisingly, the racemic ligand exhibited intermediate properties.

As for the mode of the epimerization by the optically active ethylenediamine derivatives whose chiral properties arise from a side chain between the two amino groups, similar results were observed. The higher yield of the mannose-type epimer was obtained with the \((R)\)-isomer. The epimerization with \((R)\)-2,2'-Ph-en (run 13) gave the corresponding epimer as the major product. With respect to the influence of the side-chain group structure, the phenyl group was more significant than the benzyl group. It is easily stipulated that it is associated with the proximity of the large aromatic ring to the ethylenediamine part.

The most significant result of this work is that the reaction system showed a molecular recognition ability, that is, the composition of the mixture of the two epimers could be regulated by nickel complex systems having the appropriate ligand. The equilibrium of the reaction system shifted in accordance with the configuration of the diamine ligand employed. This is the first observed example of molecular recognition of such steric effects during the coordination of these complexes that could be obtained in a relatively straightforward manner due to the unique geometry of the six-membered ring. The existence of two axial or equatorial positions, which are fixed by the ring structure, is a prime requisite for molecular recognition.
Preparation of 2-Hydroxymethylaldoses from Ketoses

As stated in Sect. 3, the nickel complex that coordinates the $N$- and $N'$-alkylated ethylenediamine ligand shows an excellent epimerizing ability in methanol with high selectivity. Based on this information, it is expected that 2-$C$-hydroxymethylaldopentose could be obtained in a manner similar to that of the formation of the epimerized aldose. If a 2-ketohexose could be treated as an aldopentose, which possesses a hydroxymethyl group at the carbonyl carbon, as illustrated in Fig. 10, a 2-hydroxymethylaldopentose would be obtained. In agreement with this expectation, the ternary nickel complex readily proceeds with the rearrangement, and four different ketoses yield the corresponding 2-hydroxymethylated aldoses, as shown in Fig. 11 [53, 54].

In this section, a highly efficient synthetic system for the preparation of 2-$C$-hydroxymethylaldopentoses is discussed. The reactions of four different ketohexoses ($D$-psicose, $D$-fructose, $L$-sorbose and $D$-tagatose) were studied under various conditions in order to elucidate the relationship between the two key processes, the coordination of the sugar to the nickel complex, and the rearrangement of the carbon skeleton of the substrate ketose. The system was then compared with that of the epimerization of the aldose/nickel(II)/ethylenediamine complex.

Fig. 10. Reaction mechanism of the formation of 2-$C$-hydroxymethylaldose (cf. Fig. 4)
The results for the rearrangement of D-fructose (4) into D-hamamelose (5) and L-sorbose (7) into 2-C-hydroxymethyl-L-lyxose (8) are summarized in Table 7. Each reaction was conducted in a manner similar to the epimerization of aldoses as shown in Scheme 1, except for the reaction temperature (30°C) and the reaction time (40 min), employing methanol as the solvent.

Figure 12 demonstrates that the isomerization of the fructose to the corresponding branched 2-hydroxymethylated sugar proceeds through a sequence of stereospecific rearrangements. In this study, the C-2 carbon of fructose was substituted with a $^{13}$C isotope. The carbon atom of the carbonyl group in fructose is converted into the C-2 carbon of the product, hamamelose. The $\delta$ values in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum agreed very closely with those of the authentic data shown...
Table 7. Preparation of 2-C-hydroxymethyl-D-ribose (hamamelose) (%) from D-fructose and 2-hydroxymethyl-L-lyxose (%) from L-sorbose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Fru</th>
<th>Ham</th>
<th>Glc</th>
<th>Man</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,2′-en</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,2′-en</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,1′,1′-en</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,2′-pn</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chxn</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1′-chxn</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,2′-chxn</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,3′-chxn</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i4,i4′-chxn</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8,8′-chxn</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaOH</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Sor</th>
<th>2-HM-Lyx</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2,2′-en</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,1′-en</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,3′-chxn</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8,8′-chxn</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Structure of N,N′-dipropyl-cyclohexanediamine (3,3′-chxn)

in Table 8. The hamamelose obtained consists of four constitutional isomers, α- and β-hamamelopyranoses and α- and β-hamamelofuranoses.

Taking into account the influence of the ligand diamine structures, a series of N,N′-dialkylated cyclohexanediamines (R,R′-chxn) were the most suitable ligands for the preparation of the 2-C-hydroxymethylated sugars. Each of the cyclohexanediamine derivatives is a racemic mixture of stereoisomers. Hamamelose (5) was obtained with high selectivity in a one-pot reaction in 56% yield employing the Ni(II)/3,3′-chxn complex. Very few by-products, such as glucose and mannose, were formed under the standard conditions for the reaction. As it is well known that monosaccharides are susceptible to alkali, and the solution containing the nickel/diamine complex is weakly basic, these minute amounts of aldoses could have been formed via an enediol intermediate in this basic environment.

Conversely, when the reaction mixture contained sodium hydroxide, fructose gave glucose and mannose in addition to a mixture of unidentified carbohydrates. The aldoses must have been formed by the LdB-AvE rearrangement of fructose via an enediol intermediate. In this case, the equilibrium between the two epimers favored glucose [41b, 48].

In a discussion on the influence of the diamine structure on the rearrangement of ketoses, information obtained from the epimerization of aldoses could be of interest. As pointed out in the context of the reaction mechanism, when a
Table 8. $^{13}$C NMR data of fructose and hamamelose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>C-1</th>
<th>C-2</th>
<th>C-3</th>
<th>C-4</th>
<th>C-5</th>
<th>C-6</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$-D-Fructopyranose</td>
<td>65.9</td>
<td>99.1</td>
<td>70.9</td>
<td>71.3</td>
<td>62.1</td>
<td>61.9</td>
<td>[69]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$-D-Fructopyranose</td>
<td>64.7</td>
<td>99.1</td>
<td>68.4</td>
<td>70.5</td>
<td>70.1</td>
<td>64.1</td>
<td>[69, 70]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$-D-Fructofuranose</td>
<td>63.8</td>
<td>105.5</td>
<td>82.9</td>
<td>77.0</td>
<td>82.2</td>
<td>61.9</td>
<td>[69, 70]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$-D-Fructofuranose</td>
<td>63.6</td>
<td>102.6</td>
<td>76.4</td>
<td>75.4</td>
<td>81.6</td>
<td>63.2</td>
<td>[69, 70]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$-D-Hamamelopyranose</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>75.2</td>
<td>67.3</td>
<td>68.2</td>
<td>64.8</td>
<td>60.5</td>
<td>[71]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$-D-Hamamelopyranose</td>
<td>95.0</td>
<td>74.7</td>
<td>66.0</td>
<td>68.9</td>
<td>63.2</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>[71]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$-D-Hamamelofuranose</td>
<td>96.6</td>
<td>77.4</td>
<td>69.6</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>62.2</td>
<td>62.4</td>
<td>[71]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$-D-Hamamelofuranose</td>
<td>101.5</td>
<td>79.6</td>
<td>71.3</td>
<td>82.6</td>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>[71]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

harmonic motion between the coordination of the sugar and release of the ligand into the reaction system occurs, the reaction proceeds smoothly. Whereas a primary amino group is unsuitable, a secondary or tertiary one substituted with a suitable alkyl group provides for the rearrangement of the ketose.

One can readily understand that the configuration and the conformation of a particular sugar has a significant effect on the formation of the ternary glycoside complex. For a series of ketohexoses, the contrasting yields can be explained.
in terms of the relative configuration of the two hydroxyl groups of the ketose substrate involved in the process. This suggests that a sugar/Ni complex interaction contributes in some way to the coordination during the reaction. Observing the influence of the substrate sugar’s configuration, the following tendency was recognized. Among the yields of the four types of 2-C-hydroxymethylated aldopentoses including hamamelose, the yields of 2-hydroxymethyl-D-ribose (5) and 2-hydroxymethyl-L-lyxose (8) were 56 and 21%, respectively. Conversely, the yields of 2-hydroxymethyl-D-arabinose (2) and 2-hydroxymethyl-D-xylose (11) were extremely low (2 and 5%, respectively). The coordination of the sugar to a nickel complex is a very important process for preparing a branched-chain sugar in high yield from a ketose. The 2-C-branched-chain sugars were produced in relatively high yield from two ketoses, D-fructose (4) and L-sorbose (7), in which the two hydroxyl groups at C-3 and C-4 are aligned in a *threo* relationship. Two other ketoses, 1 and 10, in which in the two hydroxyl groups at C-3 and C-4 are *erythro* positioned, gave the corresponding isomerized sugars in very low yields.

This indicates that the availability of the hydroxyl groups for coordination with the nickel/diamine complex is the principal factor which governs the extent of the ketose rearrangement. These results suggest that the coordination of 1 and 10 to the nickel/diamine complex is more difficult to achieve as compared with the interaction of 4 and 7. This is also in keeping with the fact that the configuration of the hydroxyl groups in the sugar is a controlling factor of the aldose epimerization [44b].

In this context, it appears to be of relevance to briefly mention some comparable reaction systems for ketose epimerization. Petruš and his group, as well as Petrušovič and Hricovíniová, this vol., recently reported the stereospecific molybdic acid catalyzed isomerization of 2-hexuloses to branched-chain aldoses [55–57]. Upon treatment with a catalytic amount of molybdic acid in aqueous solution, the 2-ketohexoses, D-fructose, L-sorbose and D-tagatose, underwent a stereospecific intramolecular rearrangement to give the corresponding 2-C-hydroxymethylaldoses, 2-C-hydroxymethyl-D-ribose (D-hamamelose), 2-C-hydroxymethyl-L-lyxose and 2-C-hydroxymethyl-D-xylose, respectively (see Petruš, Petrušová and Hricovíniová, this vol.).

Wagner and Stütz reported the nickel(II)-catalyzed isomerization reactions of D-fructose derivatives modified at positions 5 and/or 6 [58, 59]. As already mentioned, this reaction system has attracted significant interest because of its possible extension to a wide range of carbohydrates.

5 Epimerization by a Hydrophobic Nickel Complex in Aqueous Solution

In recent years, reactions carried out in organized molecular assemblies such as micellar solutions have attracted much interest in many fields. This is because organized molecular aggregates can be applied as mimics of biological systems, that is, many reactions proceed smoothly as in living systems. Such reactions are observed, for example, as chemiluminescence [60], hydroxylation of benzene [61], debromination of bromocarboxylic acid [62], phosphate ester hydrolysis [63] and others, carried out in the aggregate.
In this section, the effect of aggregates such as metallomicelles comprised of nickel and hydrophobic diamines on the epimerization of aldoses is outlined. A homologous series of nickel/ethylenediamine complexes of various \( N,N\)-dimethyl-\( N'\)-alkylethylenediamines (1,1,\( n\)°-en) was prepared and examined \[64\]. The influence of the hydrophobicity of the ligand on the epimerization in aqueous media was assessed. The objective of this work was to clarify why differences in hydrophobicity affect the outcome of the epimerization and to characterize the nature of the aggregative metallomicelle.

### 5.1 Progress of the Epimerization

The epimerization reaction was carried out in a manner similar to the procedure shown in Scheme 1 (Sect. 2.2) except for the reaction medium. Water instead of methanol was used in this investigation. Analytical results and yields of the epimers are given in Table 9, and illustrated in Fig. 13. Data show the degree of epimerization at 80 °C after 20 min in an aqueous solution as a function of alkyl chain length of \( N,N\)-dimethyl-\( N'\)-alkylated ethylenediamine at a nickel complex concentration of 67 mM.

For the epimerization of aldohexoses (glucose and mannose), minute amounts of fructose are produced as the sole by-product. In the case of the aldo-

**Table 9.** Epimerization products from glucose, mannose, xylose and lyxose in an aqueous solution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Products (%)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Products (%)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substrate</td>
<td>Glu</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Fru</td>
<td>Xyl</td>
<td>Lyx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,1°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,2°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,6°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,8°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,9°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,10°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,12°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,14°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,16°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,18°-en</td>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lyxose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pentoses (xylose and lyxose), the product contains corresponding ketose (xylulose), other complex sugars, as well as unidentified decomposition products, in addition to starting material and the corresponding C-2 epimerized aldoses.

The nickel complex coordinating a less alkylated diamine lost much of its ability to epimerize although it showed a high epimerizing activity to attain the equilibrium in methanol, as discussed in Sect. 3.1. Although 1,1,1'-en shows an excellent epimerizing capacity in methanolic solution, its ability vanishes in water.

Conversely, an equilibrium between the C-2 epimers, with a composition almost identical for d-glucose and d-mannose as starting sugars, was smoothly

---

**Fig. 13.** Influences of the carbon number in a Ni(II)/1,1,n'-en complex on the epimerization between glucose and mannose (bottom) and between xylose and lyxose (top)
attained when \(N\)-alkylated ethylenediamines with longer chains, such as 1,1,16\(\text{¢}\)-en or 1,1,18\(\text{¢}\)-en, were used as ligands. As Fig. 13 shows, the yields of the C-2 epimers increase with the carbon chain length of the diamine, irrespective of which aldose is subjected to the reaction conditions. The epimerization increases noticeably when the \(N\)\(\text{¢}\)-alkyl group becomes longer than octyl (1,1,8\(\text{¢}\)-en) and the epimerization curves shift to higher values to attain equilibrium with increasing alkyl chain length. A dramatic difference is observed between the yields of epimers, depending on the hydrophobicity of the diamine complex employed. Epimerization was observed in the hydrophobic complex system (ligands 1,1,9\(\text{¢}\)-en and 1,1,18\(\text{¢}\)-en) furnishing yields of 30–70%, which are approximately 15–35-fold better than observed in hydrophilic system (ligands 1,1,1\(\text{¢}\)-en and 1,1,2\(\text{¢}\)-en), both in the aldohexose and the aldopentose series.

The influence of the pH of the medium on the extent of epimerization was investigated. The pH values of the aqueous solutions containing nickel chloride and the ethylenediamine derivative were measured at 25°C, and the results were as follows: 1,1,2\(\text{¢}\)-en, pH 9.1; 1,1,8\(\text{¢}\)-en, 8.6; 1,1,9\(\text{¢}\)-en, 8.0; 1,1,12\(\text{¢}\)-en, 7.4. The pH of the solution decreased as the alkyl chain length increased and a clear relationship between the rate of the epimerization and pH of the system could not be recognized.

According to the stereospecific epimerization mechanism (see Sect. 2.2), the nature of the coordination of the aldose to a \(\text{Ni}^{2+}/\text{diamine complex is crucial to this reaction. A stereospecific rearrangement occurred in the ternary complex system composed of Ni}^{2+}, \text{diamine and sugar. It was demonstrated that the epimerization in aqueous media proceeds via a similar mechanism to that which occurs in methanolic solution. The rearrangement may take place via a Ni}^{2+}\)-chelated five-membered intermediate, where the migration occurs with an anti-periplaner alignment to the leaving diamine ligand leading to inversion of configuration at C-2. Figure 14 shows the \(^{13}\text{C NMR spectrum of the product mixture derived from (1-}^{13}\text{C)glucose (top) and from (1-}^{13}\text{C)mannose (bottom). The signals at 92.8 and 96.9 ppm were assigned to C-1 of \(\alpha\) - and \(\beta\)-glucose, and those at 72.2 and 72.8 ppm to C-2 of \(\alpha\) - and \(\beta\)-mannose, respectively (Table 1). Epimerized mannose possesses a carbon substitution at C-2, showing that even in aqueous solution the carbon sequence of the aldose was rearranged.}

The introduction of hydrophobicity into the aqueous reaction system seems to be important to attain effective epimerization. Aggregation of complex and hydrophobic interaction due to amphiphilic properties plays a key role in the coordination of aldose. Possible reasons for the large epimerizing ability of amphiphilic nickel complexes include enhanced concentration of nickel ion and ethylenediamine in a metal complex core structure on the micelle surface, which enhances the coordination of the aldose to the nickel complex. The integrated effect of an active site is responsible for the pronounced degree of epimerization.

In contrast, the nickel complexes that coordinate shorter-chain alkylated diamines show lesser degrees of epimerization, although they exhibit a high epimerizing activity to attain the equilibrium in methanol, as demonstrated in runs 16 and 17 in Table 2. They would be homogeneously dissolved in the matrix and would be strongly hydrated. The coordination of substrate sugar to the complex, which is a key process in the reaction, was inhibited by hydration.
Fig. 14. $^{13}$C NMR spectrum (22.5 MHz) of the product mixture derived from (1-$^{13}$C)glucose [1*-Glc] and from (1-$^{13}$C)mannose in aqueous solution.
5.2 Formation of Metallomicelles

It has been suggested that significant enhancement of the epimerization was due to the formation of metallomicelles in the reaction system. To confirm the existence of the micelles, the surface tension of the reaction system was measured. It was confirmed that hydrophobic Ni/diamine complexes containing alkyl chains longer than decyl form micelles, whereas Ni/diamine complexes containing alkyl chains shorter than nonyl do not. It should be emphasized that such formation of micelles was in accordance with the occurrence of epimerization. The fact that a nickel complex that can aggregate to form metallomicelles shows excellent epimerizing ability is the most noteworthy point.

The dependence of the critical micelle concentration (cmc) on the chain length was also investigated. The results are shown in Fig. 15. In general, the cmc of amphiphiles in aqueous media decreases as the hydrophobic character of the amphiphile increases, and the relationships between the cmc and the number of carbon atoms (N) in the hydrophobic group can be expressed by the following equation:

\[
\log C_{\text{cmc}} = A - BN
\]

where A and B are constants reflecting the free energy changes involved in transferring the hydrophilic group and a methylene unit of the hydrophobic group,

![Fig. 15. Effect of length of the hydrophobic N'-alkyl group on the critical micelle concentration on the carbon number in ligands 1,1,n'-en](image)
respectively, from an aqueous environment to the micelle. The values of A and B for the micelle of this metallic complex were –0.43 and 0.24, respectively. They are compatible with those for known commercial anionic and cationic surfactants [65].

5.3 Catalytic Activity of the Amphiphilic Complex System

The variation of the epimerization in aqueous media was also studied. The catalytic activity was presented by means of relative activity with changing molar ratio between glucose and nickel complex. The epimerization of glucose under the normal conditions was employed as a standard. The results are summarized in Fig. 16.

When a hydrophobic ligand was employed, the epimerizing ability of the nickel complex was not significantly reduced, even when a relatively large amount of aldose was applied. The Ni\textsuperscript{2+}/1,1,12\textsuperscript{¢}en complex, in particular, showed excellent epimerization properties even when the molar ratio of complex to aldose was increased by a factor of about 30. This would suggest interconversion between free aldose in a bulk aqueous phase and aldose coordinated to the nickel complex, and that the interconversion is accompanied during the epimerization by the skeletal rearrangement of the two epimers. In contrast, the hydrophilic nickel complex shows no catalytic epimerizing ability under standard conditions.

Furthermore, the relationship between concentration and catalytic activities was considered. The hydrophobic nickel complexes facilitate the epimerization

![Fig. 16. Influences of the concentration of the Ni complex on the epimerization](image-url)
by the assembly of the Ni\textsuperscript{2+} ion and diamine on the micelle. The effect of the concentration of the Ni/diamine complex on the epimerization of aldoses was discussed. The results are shown for Ni\textsubscript{2}Cl\textsubscript{2} \cdot 6H\textsubscript{2}O and N,N-dimethyl-N\textsuperscript{o}-dodecyl-ethylenediamine, giving the concentration of nickel complex as indicated in Fig. 16. Under standard conditions, with the concentration of the nickel complex at 67 mM, glucose and mannose were smoothly converted into the corresponding epimers, whereas no epimerization took place at concentrations below 20 mM.

Comparison of these results may not be straightforward, since the surface tension and epimerization were measured at different temperatures (the former at 25 °C and the latter at 80 °C). However, it is interesting that the findings are consistent with the interpretation that aggregates were formed, giving additional evidence for metallomicelles.

6
References

66. Johnson LF, Jankowski WC (1973) JEOL Carbon-13 spectra, vol 1, #197
Enzymatically catalysed isomerisation of free sugars is an important and economically viable alternative to chemical means for achieving such transformations. The conversion of D-glucose into D-fructose with D-xylose (D-glucose) isomerase (EC 5.3.1.5) has become a large-scale industrial application producing more than ten million tons of fructose syrup annually. Due to the remarkable tolerance of this and related enzymes, for example, L-fucose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.3), for epimers, as well as chemically modified substrate analogues bearing non-natural features, such as azido or fluoro substituents, a large variety of interesting and novel synthetic applications has become feasible for these remarkably useful and easy-to-handle biocatalysts.

**Keywords:** Aldose ketol isomerases, Enzymatic isomerisation, L-Fucose isomerase, D-Glucose (D-Xylose) isomerase, Non-natural substrates, L-Rhamnose isomerase
1 Introduction

The tremendous importance of organometallic as well as bioorganic chemistry in contemporary organic synthesis and manufacturing is nicely mirrored in recent developments in carbohydrate chemistry, in particular when concerned with the preparation of commercial products ranging from commodities to sophisticated building blocks and high added value compounds. Long-known methods of conventional epimerisation and isomerisation of free sugars, such as the Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement (see Angyal, this vol.), as well as more recently discovered approaches via transition metal complex formation in protic solutions (see chapters by Petruš, Petrušová, and Hricoviniová and Osanai, this vol.), have been complemented by the discovery of a range of enzymes which interconvert aldoses into their epimers or into the corresponding ketoses with a high degree of selectivity. In some cases, very interesting and preparatively useful substrate tolerances with respect to a large variety of structural modifications of their natural substrates have been observed. These epimerases and isomerases belong to class 5 of EC numbers and feature a wide range of interesting properties.

1.1 Epimerases and Isomerases

Epimerases are a group of quite diverse enzymes of varying molecular masses whose catalytic mechanisms have not yet been fully investigated. They may utilise free sugars (Scheme 1) such as N-acetylglucosamine 2-epimerase (EC 5.1.3.8) [1], their corresponding terminal phosphates, for example, N-acetylglucosamine-6-phosphate 2-epimerase (EC 5.1.3.9, Scheme 1, compounds 1 and 2) [2] and L-ribulose-5-phosphate 4-epimerase (EC 5.1.3.4, compounds 3 and 4) [3], or 1-GDP or -UDP-“protected” sugars, for example, UDP-L-arabinose 4-epimerase (EC 5.1.3.5) [3] or GDP-D-mannose 3,5-epimerase (EC 5.1.3.18, compounds 5 and 6) [3, 4]. In all cases of O-1 unprotected sugars, these give the corresponding epimers at C-2. No obvious trends are observed with open-chain ketose phosphates as well as UDP- or GDP-protected pyranoses.

Interesting preparative applications of epimerases could be envisaged, as exemplified by the preparation of D-sorbose (8) from D-tagatose (7) [5] or of D-
psicose (10) from d-fructose (9) [6] with immobilised d-tagatose 3-epimerase (d-TE), just to mention a few recent examples (Scheme 2).

Isomerases interconvert free aldoses and the corresponding 2-ketoses. Other representatives, such as glucose 6-phosphate isomerase (EC 5.3.1.9), require phosphate groups at the terminal carbon of the respective sugar (Scheme 3, compounds 11 and 12).

These enzymes, in particular d-xylose isomerase (d-glucose isomerase, EC 5.3.1.5) and l-fucose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.3), have attracted considerably more attention in terms of synthetic applicability, as compared with the epimerases,
and several preparative applications, mostly in context with natural product synthesis, can be found in the literature.

2

D-Glucose (D-Xylose) Isomerase (EC 5.3.1.5)

2.1 History

In 1952, for the first time, an enzyme that had the ability to isomerise an unsubstituted free sugar, namely D-erythrose into D-glycero-tetrulose, was discovered [7]. Subsequently, it was found that *Escherichia coli* produces enzymatic activity that converts D-arabinose (13) into D-erythro-pentulose (14) and it was suggested that D-arabinose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.3) catalyses the isomerisation of L-fucose (15) into L-fuculose (6-deoxy-L-lyxo-hexulose, 16) (Scheme 4) [8].

The conversion of D-glucose (17) into D-fructose (9) by a microbial enzyme (Scheme 5) was first reported in 1957 when Marshall and Kooi found glucose isomerase activity in cell-free extracts of *Pseudomonas hydrophila* [9]. This enzymatic activity was enhanced in the presence of arsenate. Soon thereafter, other arsenate-requiring enzymes were isolated from *Aerobacter* sp. as well as *Escherichia freundii* [10]. Enzymes required arsenate when D-glucose or D-fructose was the substrate but not when the corresponding 6-phosphates 11 and 12 were offered. Purification of the arsenate-dependent principle component from *Escherichia intermedia* allowed the conclusion that the enzyme was a glucose 6-phosphate isomerase (EC 5.3.1.9) that was able to isomerise free D-glucose when it was complexed with arsenate [11].

A true glucose isomerase that did not require arsenate for its activity was discovered in *Lactobacillus brevis* [12]. Such enzymes were later also found in the genus *Streptomyces* and this source was first reported in 1965 [13]. Subsequent studies demonstrated that the *Streptomyces* enzyme responsible for this conversion is inducible and is rather a D-xylose isomerase, as the value of $K_M$
is one to two orders of magnitude smaller with \(d\)-xylose (18)/\(d\)-\textit{threo}-pentulose (\(d\)-xylulose, 19) as the substrates [14]. \(d\)-Xylose isomerase found in other microorganisms, such as \textit{Lactobacillus brevis} [15] and \textit{Bacillus coagulans} [16], were also able to convert \(d\)-ribose (20) into \(d\)-ribulose (21). A further extension to the range of substrates was reported for \(d\)-xylose isomerase from \textit{Streptomyces albus}, which was also able to isomerise \(d\)-alloose (22), \(l\)-arabinose (24) and \(l\)-rhamnose (26) into the corresponding ketoses 23, 25 and 27 (Scheme 5) [17].

It was discovered that several other strains of \textit{Streptomyces}, \textit{Bacillus} and \textit{Lactobacillus} were able to produce these enzymes [18]. Their pH-optimum was
determined around pH 8, but the range of activity reaches from pH 5 to pH 12. Enzymes from a variety of sources were found to be dependent on magnesium, manganese, or cobalt ions, while calcium and some divalent transition metal ions, such as copper, iron and nickel, were found to inhibit their activities. Optimum temperatures for the conversion range between 70 and 85 °C [3] as yields of D-fructose increase with temperature, but enzyme stability decreases dramatically in this temperature range. Consequently, industrial processes are conducted around 60 °C. Recently, enzymes that allow higher reaction temperatures of up to 95 °C have been reported [19].

Purification of enzymes from several sources allowed the determination of their molecular masses of around 120,000 [20] to around 200,000 [21] for the respective complete tetrameric structures. Enzymes from *Streptomyces olivochromogenes* and from *Bacillus stearothermophilus* were compared in respect to their physicochemical and enzymatic properties [20].

The lack of a supply of sucrose after the Cuban revolution in 1958 triggered in-depth research into glucose (xylose) isomerases and initiated their commercial importance in the USA. As early as 1967, immobilised D-xylose isomerase found its first commercial application in the United States based on the production of “high-fructose corn syrup” (HFCS) from corn-starch based on a Japanese patent [22] and, in 1984, Coca-Cola and Pepsi Cola approved quantitative substitution of sucrose by EFCS (enriched HFCS) in the USA. The annual world consumption of HFCS is estimated at more than 10 million tons dry weight, making D-xylose isomerase the largest scale intracellular immobilised enzyme used in industry [23, 24]. The annual growth rate was recently estimated at 3–4% on a global basis [24]. Several methods for immobilisation have been made available and were recently reviewed [24]. Comprehensive surveys on various aspects including industrial scope and significance of xylose isomerases are available [23–25].

### 2.2 Structural and Mechanistic Studies

Many of the mechanistic aspects of glucose isomerase catalysed aldose-ketose interconversion have been under discussion for some time and are still not fully understood. By comparison with triose phosphate isomerase (TIM, EC 5.3.1.1) and glucose 6-phosphate isomerase (EC 5.3.1.9), the base-catalysed formation of an 1,2-enediol was invoked as the key step of the epimerisation based on the work of Rose and co-workers with tritium-labelled substrates [26]. An unexplained feature of the epimerisation process was that in contrast to isomerisations with triose phosphate isomerase no proton exchange with the medium could be observed with D-xylose isomerase, a fact that was attributed to the phosphate group of the former as a mediator for the exchange process [26]. Subsequently, additional important differences between triose phosphate isomerase and xylose isomerase were recognised. For example, D-xylose isomerase is apparently a very slow enzyme catalysing about five molecules per second per active site with an absolute requirement for divalent cations, while TIM does not need co-factors and operates at nearly 1000-fold the speed of D-xylose isomerase at...
the diffusion-controlled limit. For these reasons it can be called an ideal enzyme [27]. A detailed discussion of the reaction mechanism of xylose isomerase based on the enediol pathway was provided by Dyson and Noltmann [28] as well as Alworth [29].

Investigations into the anomeric specificity of the enzyme suggested that the α-xylopyranose was utilised exclusively, a fact demonstrated by comparison of initial reaction rates with pure and mixed anomers assuming that the rate of spontaneous mutarotation of each sugar is slow [30].

In a seminal contribution, Bock and co-workers conducted mechanistic studies on soluble as well as immobilised xylose isomerase from Xanthomonas murinus sp. (Sweetzyme Q from NOVO) employing NMR-spectrometric methods. These studies confirmed the lack of deuterium exchange with solvent molecules of d-glucose and d-fructose regiospecifically C-deuterated at C-1 and C-2 [31]. It is noteworthy that they found the (1S)-diastereomer of d-(1-2H)fructose (29) was formed with perfect selectivity by isomerisation of d-(1-2H)glucose (28) and so was the corresponding (1R)-epimer (31) when d-(2-2H)glucose (30) was employed as the substrate (Scheme 6).

No other products were detected in the reaction mixture and no isotopic scrambling occurred in the course of the reaction. These observations remained uncommented on but, in the light of later findings, do already suggest a highly ordered mechanism involving a hydride (deuteride) shift as opposed to the proton shift based enediol pathway involving solvent exchange as seen with triose phosphate isomerase. Applying 13C-NMR spectrometry these workers also confirmed earlier findings [29] that the α-anomer of d-glucopyranose is the substrate and β-d-fructofuranose is released from the enzymatic process (Scheme 7).

Further NMR-spectroscopic investigations into the mechanism and reactive species of the d-glucose/d-fructose interconversion by Optisweet P (Miles Kali-Chemie) employing d-(1-13C)glucose confirmed that the α-anomer of d-glucose is the aldose substrate for the enzyme. However, in contrast to prior observations [21], α-d-fructofuranose (not β-d-glucofuranose) appeared to be the ketose substrate [32]. Very recently, these interpretations have been supported by Col-
lyer and co-workers from their interpretations of crystal structures of D-xylose isomerase with stable structural analogues of the putative reactive species [33].

Applying the “principle of least molecular motion” a reaction pathway (Scheme 8) based on the enediol mechanism was proposed [32] that also explained the stereospecific formation of (1S)-(29) and (1R)-D-(1-2H)fructose (31) from D-(1-2H)- (28) and D-(2-2H)glucose (30), respectively [31].

In 1984 Carrell and co-workers published the first X-ray crystal structure (Scheme 9) of a D-xylose isomerase at 4 Å resolution [34]. This cobalt-dependent enzyme from Streptomyces rubiginosus had been shown to have an approximate molecular mass of 165.000 and to consist of four structurally identical peptide chains each containing around 370 amino acid residues [35]. It was established that the main section consisted of eight β-strand α-helix (βα) units arranged in a configuration similar to the ones found in triose phosphate isomerase [36], pyruvate kinase [37], 2-keto-3-deoxy-6-phosphogluconate aldolase [38], as well as ten, possibly eleven [39] other enzymes [40], forming a characteristic closed α/β-barrel, while a smaller loop-shaped domain overlaps the larger domain of another subunit, so furnishing a tightly bound “embracing dimer”. The whole, tetrameric structure consists of two such dimers. Two years later, a magnesium-dependent D-xylose isomerase from Arthrobacter sp. was crystallised [41]. The sequences and gene coding for D-xylose isomerases from various microorganisms, including Bacillus subtilis [42], E. coli [43], Ampulariella sp. [44] and Streptomyces violaceoniger [45], have been made available and aligned. It was shown [46] that a number of residues are conserved in all sequences implying significant roles in the structures or functions of the enzyme. It was recognised that two histidine residues, in particular, were conserved in the sequences of all species under consideration and their function was probed by site-specific substitution [47].

By this time, X-ray structures had been reported for several xylose isomerases. The previously reported [34] structure of the Streptomyces rubiginosus enzyme had been refined to a 3 Å resolution [48]. A structure of the same reso-
Scheme 9. a Shaded ribbon presentation of d-xylose (d-glucose) isomerase (EC 5.3.1.5) [61] with open-chain d-xylose/xylulose (capped sticks) coordinated to two metal ions in the active site (left) and l-fucose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.3) [94] with l-fucose and one metal ion (right). b Detail of the active site of d-xylose isomerase with histidine coordinating O-5 of d-xylose and the two metal ions interacting with O-1, O-2 and O-4 of the substrate. c Detail of the active site of d-fucose isomerase with the metal ion coordinating O-1 and O-2 of the substrate.
olution had been determined [49] for xylose isomerase from *Streptomyces olivochromogenes*, the structure of the *Arthrobacter* B3278 isomerase was available at 2.5 Å resolution [41] and the structure of the enzyme from *Actinoplanes missouriensis* [50] as well as the one from *Streptomyces albus* [46, 51] had been discussed. They all exist as tetramers with 222 symmetry; the respective monomers in each case exhibiting the characteristic eight-stranded α/β-barrel structure, thus confirming the close relationship of these enzymes.

Initiated by a paper from Carrell and co-workers [52] reporting the structure of D-xylose isomerase from *Streptomyces rubiginosus* refined to 1.9 Å resolution, in which the authors claimed experimental support for the enediol mechanism, controversy on the true mechanism of the enzymatic catalysis arose. This group had designed the aldose analogue 32, a suicide inhibitor of the isomerase, and had determined three crystal structures: that of the native enzyme, of the enzyme with bound substrate/product, and the enzyme after reaction with the mechanism-based inhibitor (Scheme 10).

The two metal cations were located, one of which exhibited nearly ideal octahedral coordination with oxygen atoms from Glu-181, Glu-217, Asp-245, Asp-287 as well as two molecules of water. The second cation was found to coordinate Glu-217, Asp-255, Asp-257, His-220 and one water molecule. The metals were 4.9 Å apart in the native structure and Glu-217 was established to coordinate both with different oxygens of its carboxylate group. From the magnitudes of temperature factors and from peak heights in the electron density maps the cations were inferred to be Mn\(^{2+}\). From the structure containing substrate/product

![Scheme 10](image)
it was apparent that the substrate molecule was bound in the open-chain form and coordinated to metal one by O-3 and O-5 while O-1 and O-2 were found to be coordinated by a water molecule in the proximity of Thr-90 and Thr-91. The mechanism-based inhibitor was found to alkylate His-54.

Because of the close interaction of C-1 of the substrate with His-54, indicating an incipient hydrogen abstraction through the Re-face of C-1, it was suggested that His-54 was the base catalyst facilitating the formation of the cis-configured enediol intermediate. The metal ions were assumed to be important for the structural integrity of the active site and for the coordination of hydroxyl functions of the substrate remote from the site of the isomerisation reaction. Alkylation of His-54 by the suicide inhibitor reinforced the interpretation of the role of this amino acid residue as the base catalyst.

In contrast, in their publication on crystallographic studies of xylose isomerase from *Streptomyces olivochromogenes*, Petsko and co-workers [53] came to the conclusion that a hydride shift mechanism (Scheme 11) agreed better with their findings from experiments also conducted under steady-state conditions by use of a flow cell, than the classical enediol pathway.

This technique is based on the constant flow of substrate over the crystal providing products being washed away. It was assumed that the time-averaged structure determined in such an experiment was dominated by the species that precedes the transition state of highest free energy (which as the authors clearly say does not need to be the same as that observed in an equilibrium experiment by soaking the crystals in the substrate).

The only base in the active site possibly working as the catalyst is a histidine, His-219. Yet, this residue is positioned to act as the ring-opening base. Other possible candidates for the role as ring-opening base could also be excluded, a fact that again pointed to the histidine as the base that catalyses the conversion of the cyclic into the open-chain form of the sugar. As the absence of label exchange with the medium is also consistent with a hydride shift, the divalent metal cation must serve as a Lewis acid stabilising the formation of a carbocation at the carbonyl carbon prior to the concerted transfer of a hydride. By coordination with O-1 and O-2, the cation could also stabilise a conformation favouring the hydride shift (Scheme 11). From chemical reactions involving a hydride shift, such as the Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley-Oppenauer [54] and the Cannizzaro [55] reactions, the role of metal ions acting in this way was known.

This view on the reaction mechanism was strongly supported by Collyer and Blow [56] who compared their findings with the enzyme from *Arthrobacter* B3278 with Carrell’s results [52]. In their view, the “mechanism-based inactivator”, which is supposed to become “armed” upon isomerisation of the aldose to the α,β-unsaturated ketose, then alkylate His-53 (which corresponds to His-54 of the *Streptomyces rubiginosus* enzyme), does not bind in a “productive” conformation which would involve interaction of O-3 with one of the cations in the active site. This is not possible if this compound does not bear a hydroxy function in this position. They reasoned that the alkylation step could occur independently of the isomerisation as, in their opinion, His-53 is not involved in the latter. Furthermore, the authors disagreed on the orientation of the substrate ω-
xylose/d-xylulose bound to the active site “allowing opposite conclusions on the isomerisation mechanism”. Following their arguments, His-53 serves to ring open the substrate. In this open-chain conformation C-1 and C-2 are close to the cation binding sites but there is no base in the right position to catalyse the formation of the enediol intermediate. The cation in site two moves slightly to coordinate O-1 and O-2 and, aided by cation 1 and a lysine moiety, Lys-182, becomes the electrophile that expels the proton from O-2 during the hydride ion shift. The substrate side where the hydride shift occurs is positioned in a strongly hydrophobic environment preventing the exchange of hydride with solvent confirming previous experimental observations [26, 33].

By site-directed mutagenesis of His-101 in xylose isomerase from Clostridium thermosulfurogenes, and identification of the rate-limiting step during catalysis by monitoring deuterium isotope effects on the $V_{\text{max}}$ values of both
wild-type and Gln-101 mutant enzymes, the hydride shift mechanism was further supported by Zeikus and co-workers [57]. It was found that \( \text{d-}(2^{-3}\text{H})\)glucose (30) slowed the reaction rate of the wild-type as well as the mutant enzyme by a factor of four when compared with the reaction rate of \( \text{d-} \)glucose under the same conditions. These results suggested that the rate-determining step for both the wild-type enzyme and the mutant enzyme, that lack a base catalyst at position 101, is the hydrogen transfer and His-101 does not act as a simple base, since, in this case, inactive enzymes would have to be expected as the result of site-directed substitutions.

As it had been found that the enzyme specifically reacts with the \( \alpha \)-anomer, but that the substrate detected in crystals of enzyme substrate complex was the open-chain form, the authors suggested, similar to Collyer and Blow, that the mechanism involves three major steps in the catalytic isomerisation of \( \text{d-} \)glucose: ring opening of the substrate \( \alpha \)-\( \text{d-} \)xylopyranose aided by interaction of His-101 with O-5 of the aldose, isomerisation by a metal ion catalysed hydride shift, and ring closure of the product.

Detailed kinetic analysis of the catalytic mechanism of the \textit{Arthrobacter} enzyme by Rangarajan and Hartley [58] also supported the hydride shift mechanism. However, these workers imply different reaction pathways for the \( \text{Mg}^{2+} \) and the \( \text{Co}^{2+} \) enzymes. The rate-limiting step was inferred to be the isomerisation and not the ring opening, in contrast to the results of Zeikus and co-workers. Reports from Withlow and co-workers [59] as well as Collyer and his group [60] provided further support for the hydride shift mechanism.

In a comprehensive investigation, Lambeir and co-workers added significant information to the knowledge of the catalytic mechanism of xylose isomerase [61]. In the first of a series of three papers, this group established the role of the two metal ions in the course of the reaction with the enzyme from \textit{Actinoiplanes missouriensis}. Metal site 1 is tetracoordinated and tetrahedral in the absence and becomes hexacoordinated and octahedral in the presence of substrate. During the interaction with metal ion 1, O-2 and O-4 of the sugar are coordinated. Metal ion 2 is always octahedral and changes its position by 0.7 Å when binding to O-1 and more than 1 Å when coordinating O-2 of the substrate. These bonds replace bonds to carboxylate ligands from the protein backbone. In the presence of open-chain ligands, metal site 1 was found to be virtually identical in \( \text{A. missouriensis} \) and \( \text{S. rubiginosus} \). The two metal ions play an essential part in binding the substrate, stabilising the open-chain form and catalysing the hydride shift. The second paper identified two histidine residues (His-220 and His-54) as important for catalysis. His-220, however, is not a catalytic base but plays a role in the coordination of metal ion 2. The role of His-54, previously believed to be the base catalyst facilitating the ring opening of the bound substrate, despite its interaction with OH-1 of the cyclic and OH-5 of the acyclic substrate, respectively, was questioned but the authors came to the conclusion that this residue governs the anomeric specificity of the enzyme for steric reasons.

In the last account of the series the previously observed conformational flexibility [59, 62] of Asp-255 was suggested to be an integral part of the catalytic process. The residue was believed to support the movement of metal ion 2...
during binding to the substrate and subsequent hydride shift as well as the shuttling of a proton between O-1 and O-2 with the aid of a water molecule in the proximity of both, metal 2 and Asp-255.

Subsequent investigations into the catalytic action of the isomerase from *Streptomyces olivochromogenes* further substantiated the putative hydride shift pathway and gave strong evidence against a proton transfer via an enediol intermediate as part of the reaction (Scheme 12). A reinvestigation of the original solvent isotope incorporation experiments of Rose and co-workers at temperatures of 15, 25 as well as 55°C [63] showed that in d-fructose resulting from the isomerisation reaction, less than 0.6% of hydrogen was substituted by tritium convincingly confirming Rose's original report.

Neither 3-deoxy-3-fluoro-d-glucose (33) [63, 64] nor the corresponding d-allo-configured epimer 35 were observed to release fluoride by β-elimination when exposed to the enzyme which would have to be expected upon proton abstraction at C-2 (Scheme 13). Furthermore, both deoxyfluoro sugars failed to act as substrates of the enzyme; this also held true for 3-deoxy-3-fluoro-d-fructose (34) [64]. It was concluded that His-53 (corresponding to His-54 in the *Streptomyces rubiginosus* enzyme) was not the ring-opening base as had been hypothesised previously but, in concert with the Mg$^{2+}$ ions, acted as stabiliser of the open-chain tautomer by interaction with O-5 of the substrate prior to 1,2-hydride transfer [63].

Replacement of the tetracoordinated Mg$^{2+}$ ion at binding site 1 by an amino acid employing site-directed mutagenesis furnished a catalytically incompetent mutant underscoring the crucial role of this catalytic entity [65]. Additional support for the hydride shift on the open-chain tautomer of the respective substrate was collected by employing 3-O-methyl-d-glucose (36) [66].

This sugar was observed to coordinate to metal site 1 of the Mg-dependent enzyme through O-2 and O-4 as well as to Mg-2 through O-1 and O-2 of the open-chain tautomer. His-53 was again found to stabilise the complex by interaction with O-5. This interaction, however, is not essential for catalysis as was demonstrated by other workers [69]. The catalytic process was again accompanied by a movement of Mg-2 towards Mg-1. In the reverse reaction, substrate activation of the ketose was accomplished by complexing of both metals with the carbonyl oxygen at C-2. These findings found additional support from X-ray crystallography of an enzyme-inhibitor complex of xylose isomerase with d-threonohydroxamic acid (37, Scheme 14) at 1.6 Å resolution [67].

To re-examine a proposal suggesting a hydride shift on a cyclic tautomer of the substrates [68], the influence of active site residues in the *Streptomyces rubiginosus* enzyme was probed by site-directed mutagenesis [69]. This particular reaction pathway would include binding of the α-anomer of d-xylopyranose, with O-1 coordinated to His-54 and O-3 as well as O-4 interacting with metal 1. Isomerisation would then occur via proton abstraction of O-2 by Asp-287 and concomitant shift of hydride from C-2 to C-1. Subsequently, negatively charged O-5 completes the reaction by ring closure to C-2 of the ketose.

Based on a wide range of crystallographic data of the mutant enzymes with d-xylose (18), 5-thio-d-glucopyranose (38) or 5-deoxy-d-xylulose (39) (Scheme 15) in their active sites, this view was not supported by the investigators. An in-
vestigation into the isomerisation behaviour of glyceraldehyde in weakly alkaline aqueous solution revealed that under the conditions employed in this study (0.01 M KOD in D₂O at 25°C) proton and hydride transfer occurred at similar rates [70]. Harris and Feather [71] observed, in acidic solutions, the isomerisation of D-glucose into D-fructose accompanied by a hydride shift. This result underscores the overwhelming evidence amassed for the hydride shift mechanism in D-xylose isomerases. Recent theoretical studies of the enzymatic reac-
tion pathway employing a semiempirical molecular orbital method (PM3) also supported this reaction pathway [72] and excluded the enediol intermediate as well as a charge-relay mechanism during ring opening [73].

An interesting observation in the light of accumulated data supporting the hydride shift mechanism was made during the recently reported successful isomerisation of D-ribose (20), L-ribose (40), as well as D-lyxose (41), into the corresponding ketopentoses (21, 25, and 19, respectively, Scheme 16) [74]. It was found that the C-2 epimer of the respective aldopentose was also formed in the presence of high enzyme concentrations and upon extended reaction times of 12 h. For example, the respective enantiomer of arabinose was identified as the third component in the equilibrium of D- or L-ribose with the corresponding ketopentose. In the case of D-ribose/D-ribulose (20/21) isomerisation, the reaction mixture contained 40% of D-ribose and 30% each of D-ribulose and D-arabinose (13) after 12 h. With the L-sugars, the proportion of the “wrong” aldose epimer, L-arabinose, amounted to 2% after the same reaction period. Based on these results, the authors invoked a reaction pathway via the putative enediol
intermediate as initially proposed by Rose and co-workers [26]. Procedures were reported and the conditions employed by these workers practically rule out a non-enzymatic epimerisation, as reactions were run at pH 6.8 to avoid acid- or base-catalysed Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement reactions; blanks without enzyme, but containing Mg$^{2+}$ or Co$^{2+}$ ions as well as with metal-depleted enzyme, did not furnish isomerised products. Nevertheless, their conclusion is in marked contrast to the currently widely accepted hydride shift based mechanism for this type of enzyme. In keeping with the previously reported observations mentioned above that the corresponding enzymes from *Streptomyces olivochromogenes* and *Bacillus stearothermophilus* as well as *Bacillus* No.KX-6 accept and isomerise not only D-xylose (18) and D-glucose (17), but also D-ribose (20) as well as D-arabinose (13), the results neither contradict or support either of the two reaction pathways. L-Arabinose (24) has been reported to be a substrate for the enzyme from *Streptomyces albus* [17], which would explain this, previously unreported, very minor side activity in *Streptomyces rubiginosus*.

The formation of D-lyxose (41) from D-xylulose (19) could be rationalised on the basis of the previously observed quantitative conversion of L-erythrose (42) into the corresponding tetrulose (43) (Scheme 17) [87]. Clearly, the observations deserve further attention in order to establish whether the conversions of aldopentoses into their C-2 epimers result from interactions at the active site or with the basic enzyme surface at random. Either might occur due to the sterically less demanding, hence less tightly fitting, aldopentose structures under consideration (as opposed to D-glucose which only yielded D-fructose (9) – but no D-mannose (44) – under the same conditions).

Obviously, despite many efforts, the mechanism of D-xylose isomerase catalysed isomerisations of suitable pentoses and hexoses is far from rigorously established and need not be the same for sugars of different chain lengths and...
configurations. As with other isomerases which only bear one metal ion per active monomer, and likely catalyse by enediol formation (for example, L-fucose isomerase, see Sect. 3.1), suitable pentoses might fit into the active site interacting with only one of the two catalytic metal sites, thus bypassing the hydride shift with the equally likely [70] enolisation pathway.

2.3 Non-Natural Substrates and Synthetic Applications

D-Xylose isomerases have been found in a wide range of microorganisms. As mentioned in Sect. 2.1, their substrate specificities are not confined to D-xylose (18) and D-glucose (17) but can include D- and L-arabinose (13 and 24) [17, 74], D-ribose (20) [15, 20, 75], and L-rhamnose (6-deoxy-L-mannose, 26) [17], as well as D-allose (22) [17]. Very recent investigations already mentioned [74] have shown that L-ribose (40) as well as D-lyxose (41) are also accepted as substrates by some enzymes of the type under consideration. This would mean that of all eight aldopentoses, only L-lyxose and L-xylose have not yet been identified as substrates of D-xylose isomerases, demonstrating an intrinsic tolerance of these enzymes towards “unusual” substrates.

The first non-natural sugar derivative reported to be a substrate was 6-thio-D-glucose (45) which was found to be quantitatively converted into the corresponding D-fructopyranose 46 with sulfur in the ring (Scheme 18) [76]. In-depth investigations into the substrate tolerance of a D-xylose isomerase (Sweetzyme Q from Novo A/S, the enzyme from Streptomyces murinus sp.) were conducted by Bock and co-workers in 1983.

Results of this work showed that D-glucose derivatives modified at C-6, such as 6-deoxy-D-glucose (47) and 6-O-methyl-D-glucose (49), or C-3, for example, 3-O-methyl-D-glucose (36) and the corresponding 3-deoxy derivative 52, are substrates (Scheme 19) while modifications at C-4, for example, 4-deoxy- (54), 4-O-methyl-D-glucose (55) as well as 4,6-di-O-methyl-D-glucose (56), epimers at C-2 (D-mannose, 44), C-3 (D-allose, 22) and C-4 (D-galactose, 57) as well as L-
glucose (58) were not accepted by the xylose isomerase employed in this study (Scheme 20).

5-Thio-\(\delta\)-glucose (38) did not serve as a substrate either. On the other hand, these workers discovered that 5-deoxy-\(\delta\)-xylohexofuranose ("5-deoxy-\(\delta\)-glucose", 59) was quantitatively converted at pH 7.2 by the enzyme into the corresponding ketose (Scheme 21). They noted that incubation of the 5-deoxysugar at pH 8.5 in the absence of enzyme also gave 100% conversion but, under these conditions, unknown decomposition products were formed.

Subsequently, Card and co-workers found a conversion rate of 10–15% for the isomerisation of 6-deoxyfluoro-\(\delta\)-glucose (61) into the corresponding \(\delta\)-fructose derivative 62 (Scheme 22) [77].

These results were essentially confirmed by Wong and co-workers for the 6-deoxy (48), 6-deoxyfluoro (62) and 6-OMe (50) as well as for the 3-deoxy derivatives (53) of \(\delta\)-fructose employing immobilised xylose isomerase from Flavobacterium aborescens (Takasweet from MILES) [78] extending Bock’s list of sub-

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Scheme 19} & \\
\text{Scheme 20}
\end{align*}
\]
strates by the 6-azidodeoxy derivatives of d-glucose (63) and d-fructose (64), respectively [79]. According to these authors, l-sorboside derivatives are not substrates for the enzyme [78b]. They also confirmed the previously reported quantitative conversion of 5-deoxy-d-xylohexofuranose into the corresponding fructopyranose for the Flavobacterium enzyme [78,79b]. The availability of 6-azido-6-deoxy-d-glucose (63) from the corresponding fructose analogue 64, which had been prepared by aldolase-catalysed addition of racemic 3-azido-2-hydroxypropanal to dihydroxyacetone phosphate, was exploited by the Wong group during an approach to 1,6-dideoxy-1,6-imino-d-glucitol (65, Scheme 23), a seven-membered iminoalditol exhibiting glycosidase inhibitory properties [79c].

The enzymatic conversion of 6-azido-6-deoxy-d-glucose into its d-fructose isomer was utilised as a key step in a five-step synthesis from sucrose [80] of the natural product and powerful d-mannosidase inhibitor 1-deoxymannojirimycin (1,5-dideoxy-1,5-imino-d-mannitol, 66) [81]. Subsequently, it was shown that the immobilised enzyme from Streptomyces murinus sp. (Sweetzyme T from Novo A/S) was able to isomerise d-glucose derivatives with modifications at C-3 and C-6 such as 6-azido-6-deoxy-3-O-methyl-d-glucose (67) as well as the corresponding 3-deoxy derivative 69 (Scheme 24) [64, 82].

Following Bock’s observation with the only substrate that had been converted quantitatively, 5-deoxy-d-xylo-hexofuranose (“5-deoxy-d-glucose”, 59), it was discovered [83] that any derivative of d-glucose not bearing a free hydroxyl function at C-5, such as the 5-azidodeoxy (71), the 5-deoxyfluoro (73), and the 5-O-
benzyl (75) derivatives, was quantitatively converted to the corresponding d-fructopyranose (72, 74, and 76, respectively) by Sweetzyme T, a successor of the immobilised enzyme investigated by the Danish group (Scheme 25). Furthermore, it could be shown that the corresponding L-idofuranoses 77 and 79 were substrates as well, also being quantitatively converted into derivatives 78 and 80 of L-sorbose (Scheme 26).

Chain-extended compounds of both the d- (81) and the L-series (83, 85) bearing an additional chiral centre were also isomerised (Scheme 27), albeit requiring longer reaction times, leading to interesting higher carbon ketoses (82, 84, and 86, respectively).

Attempts to isomerise C-5 modified analogues of d-xylose, for example, 87, were successful leading to the corresponding open-chain d-xyluloses such as 88 as the predominant components in the equilibrium [64, 84]. When 5,6-dimodi-fied derivatives of d-gluco- as well as L-idofuranose, such as 89 and 91, were exposed to the enzyme, conversion to the corresponding open-chain d-fructose (90) and L-sorbose (92) analogues took place (Scheme 28) [64, 84]. At equilibrium, the reaction usually gave a 4:1 to 3:1 mixture in favour of the ketose.

This interesting finding was utilised in a synthetic approach to novel inhibitors of d-glucosidases [85]. A 6-O-(6-hydroxy)hexyl-substituted derivative (93)
Scheme 27

Scheme 28
of 5-azidodeoxy-\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-glucofuranose has recently been successfully employed as a substrate to give ketose 94 (Scheme 29) [86].

Based on the early observations that \(\text{\textit{d}}\)-ribose and \(\text{\textit{d}}\)-allose can act as substrates of xylose isomerases, the properties of (2\(\text{\textit{R}},3\text{\textit{R}}\))-configured sugars were also probed; it was found that \(\text{\textit{d}}\)-erythrose (95) was quantitatively converted into the corresponding ketose 96 (Scheme 30).

\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-Ribose derivatives such as 5-azidodeoxy- (97) and 5-deoxyfluoro-\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-ribofuranose (99) were isomerised leading to 3:1 mixtures in favour of the open-chain ketoses 98 and 100 [87]. Interestingly, \(\text{l}\)-erythrose (42) was also accepted by Sweetzyme T and, akin to its enantiomer 95, was quantitatively transformed into \(\text{l}\)-glycero-tetrulose ("\(\text{l}\)-erythrulose", 43). On the other hand, no conversion was observed with 5,6-di-O-methyl-\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-allofuranose (101, Scheme 31).

When the (2\(\text{\textit{R}},3\text{\textit{R}}\))-configured ketose was able to form a pyranose ring (Scheme 32), isomerisation was found to proceed, as observed with 5-deoxy-\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-ribo-hexofuranose (102), 5-azido-5-deoxy-\(\text{\textit{d}}\)-allofuranose (104), as well as the \(\text{l}\)-sugars 5-azido-5-deoxy- (106) and 5-deoxy-5-fluoro-\(\text{l}\)-talofuranose (108) [88].

The corresponding ketopyranoses (103, 105, 107, and 109) as precursors to interesting glycosidase-inhibiting iminoalditols were formed in 3:2 ratios favouring the corresponding aldose with isolated yields ranging between 30–40%.
In 1953, in the cell-free extract of a d-arabinose-adapted strain of *Escherichia coli*, enzymatic activity was found which converted d-arabinose (13) into d-erythro-pentulose (d-ribulose, 14) [8]. Moreover, this enzyme was able to convert L-fucose (6-deoxy-L-galactose, 15) into the corresponding ketose 16 [89]. In-depth investigations by the same authors confirmed this finding and revealed that the equilibrium could be shifted from originally 11% of L-fuculose (16) to over 80% by in situ complexation of the ketose with excess borate [90].

Subsequently, isomerases from *Aerobacter aerogenes* strains which also converted L-xylose (110, Scheme 33) were purified [91, 92] and the inducible enzymes from two other *E. coli* strains were compared [93]. It was demonstrated that both preparations were tetramers with masses around 350 kDa and were active with L-fucose (15) and D-arabinose (13). However, this was not the case for the other aldopentoses and hexoses probed such as L-arabinose (24), L-rhamnose (26), D-xylose (18), D-ribose (20), D- (17) or L-glucose (58), D- (44) or L-mannose (111), D-galactose (57) or D-fucose (6-deoxy-D-galactose, 112). Both enzymes were inhibited by alditols related to their natural substrates, exhibited their optimal catalytic activities in alkaline media, and were stimulated by the presence of Mn$^{2+}$ as well as Co$^{2+}$ but strongly inhibited by Cd$^{2+}$.
3.1 Structure and Mechanism

The structure of an L-fucose isomerase from *E. coli* was determined by X-ray crystallography at 2.5 Å resolution [94]. This manganese-dependent hexameric enzyme with subunits of 65 kDa is the largest aldose ketol isomerase of known structure. As with xylose isomerases, the open-chain tautomer of the substrate is processed and the enzyme was assumed to recognise the α-anomer prior to ring opening. The manganese ion was found to coordinate O-1 and O-2 of the substrate with two bases, Asp-361 and Glu-337, in close proximity to this part of the substrate structure. Based on the assumption that Glu-337 would be a superfluous residue in a hydride shift mediated isomerisation reaction, the enediol pathway was suggested for this particular isomerase.

3.2 Non-Natural Substrates and Synthetic Applications

Very interesting applications of the preparative potential of microbial ketol isomerases were reported by Fessner and co-workers, who gained access to preparative amounts of L-rhamnose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.14) as well as L-fucose isomerase (EC 5.3.1.3) from *E. coli* by cloning and over-expression [95]. In this way they were able to convert (Scheme 34) a variety of D- and L-pentoses and -hexoses into the corresponding 2-ketoses, such as L-mannose (111) (to L-fructose, 113), D-gulose (114) (to D-sorbose, 8) and D-allose (22) (to D-psicose, 10), to mention just a few.

By combining the enzymatic isomerisation procedure with an L-rhamnulose kinase (EC 2.7.1.5) mediated phosphorylation step high yields ranging from 70 to 90% could be obtained [96]. Subsequently, Wong and co-workers [97] reported the cloning and over-expression of L-rhamnose isomerase and fucose isomerase. This group reported the conversion of L-fructose (113) that they had synthesised by aldolase-based methodology into L-glucose (58) in fair yield (Scheme 35) [98]. Isomerisation of L-fuculose (16) and C-6 modified analogues of L-tagatose such as compounds 115 and 117 led to the corresponding L-fucose.

![Scheme 34](image)

**Scheme 34**

111 → 113

8 → 114
derivatives such as L-galactose, the corresponding 6-O-methyl derivative (116), and 6-azidodeoxy-L-galactose (118) (Scheme 36) [99].

Simple chain-extended analogues, for example, 7-deoxy-d-glycero-L-galacto-heptose (120) and the corresponding 6-deoxy compound (122), were also found to be available employing this methodology (Scheme 37) [99].

In context with a project aimed at structure-activity relationships of sialyl Lewis X epitope analogues, a range of new L-fucose derivatives with increased hydrophobicities of the C-5 substituents, such as compounds 124 and 126, was recently synthesised [100] employing Fessner’s proven L-fuculose 1-phosphate aldolase/L-fucose isomerase protocol (Scheme 38).
4 Synthetic Perspectives

D-xylose (D-glucose) isomerase as well as L-fucose and L-rhamnose isomerases have found an increasing range of interesting synthetic applications in the recent past, in particular in the synthesis of iminoalditol-based glycosidase inhibitors as well as for the preparation of rare (highly substituted and/or open-chain) sugars. The application of glucose isomerase is based on the preparative availability of suitably modified aldoses which have been enzymatically transformed into the desired corresponding ketoses; these were either converted into iminoalditols or were found to be useful biochemical probes in their own right. Conversely, L-fucose and L-rhamnose isomerases have been employed to convert ketoses that had been synthesised with the aid of aldolase or transketolase methodology into the corresponding aldoses (Scheme 39).

Frequently, the glucose isomerase based approach to non-natural ketoses and the aldolase-aided synthesis of such ketoses have been found to be convergent and lead to the same product(s). Depending on the nature of the non-natural substituents, either of these two routes can be advantageous over the other. Whereas aldolase-catalysed ketose synthesis is superior in cases of simple modifications at C-5 and/or C-6 of the desired sugar, extensively derivatised analogues are clearly more conveniently accessible by chemical modification of the aldose and subsequent enzymatic isomerisation into the corresponding ketose. This conclusion is based on preparative restrictions such as the availability of the \(\alpha,\beta\)-dimodified glyceraldehyde derivative to be coupled to dihydroxyacetone phosphate in the aldolase-catalysed carbon chain forming reaction. These are caused by the rapidly increasing overall number of synthetic steps necessary to access enantiomerically pure \(\alpha,\beta\)-dimodified derivatives of glyceraldehyde bear-
ing different substituents, for example, a fluoro and an azido group at positions 2 and 3, or vice versa.

Interesting extensions of isomerase chemistry are “coupled” enzyme systems. These could be advantageous for the removal of the desired isomer from the sometimes unfavourable equilibrium to increase yields, as pointed out by Fessner and co-workers. Other applications could make rare sugars conveniently accessible from easily available starting materials, for example, in the preparation of D-psicose from D-fructose [6] by the combination of D-xylose isomerase with D-tagatose 3-epimerase. Clearly, the wide range of other available enzymes, for example, oxidoreductases, would allow for even more exciting opportunities to access unusual carbohydrates.

5 Conclusions

Enzymatic isomerisation of free sugars has been shown to be a useful and remarkably versatile entry to a wide range of non-natural and unusual aldoses and ketoses. These, in their own right, are interesting probes for sugar processing enzymes and, consequently, useful tools for glycobiology. Furthermore, they can be exploited as enantiomerically pure building blocks and precursors of modified natural products and sugar mimetics.

Ketose chemistry is, by far, not as advanced as the knowledge on aldose reactions and conversions and, consequently, the application of isomerases in this area will be an important contribution to open up this fascinating and underrated field of carbohydrate chemistry. Rare and potentially interesting aldoses, on the other hand, which have been resistant to conventional chemical means of access, can today be made available with a range of enzymatically catalysed reactions employing sugar modifying enzymes such as the ones under consideration in this account.

Currently, about ten sugar ketol isomerases are known [3], most of them produced from more than one known source. Similar to D-xylose isomerase and L-fucose isomerase, many of them are dependent on divalent cations, and some have not even been investigated in much detail at all. None has gained even a small fraction of the interest that has been paid to D-xylose isomerase due to its long known industrial importance. L-Fucose isomerase, yet another example, is one of a very few isomerases of current noteable synthetic importance.

In addition, a range of aldose phosphate isomerases, for example, D-manno-
se 6-phosphate isomerase, as well as a good selection of epimerases and oxidoreductases, are available.

It is certain that the future will open new avenues for the application of these enzymes and there are clearly many opportunities for chemists in investigating their properties and putting their highly appreciable preparative potential to use.
6
Tables of Substrates

6.1 Substrates of D-Xylose Isomerase

6.1.1 Tetroses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tetrose</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d-erythro</td>
<td>0:1</td>
<td>8,66</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-erythro</td>
<td>0:1</td>
<td>8,39</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.1.2 Pentoses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pentose</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d-arabino</td>
<td>70:10:10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-arabino</td>
<td>74:24</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-lyxo</td>
<td>50:10:40</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Hexoses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d-ribo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:45</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15, 16, 20, 74, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:30:30</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:75</td>
<td>3–6, 65</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X = N$_3$, F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-xylo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:20</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:80</td>
<td>4–6, 50</td>
<td>64, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X = H, N$_3$, F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.1.3

**Hexoses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d-allo/d-psico</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:40</td>
<td>8, 33–37</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X = N$_3$, H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### D-Xylose (D-Glucose) Isomerase and Related Enzymes in Carbohydrate Synthesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50:50</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:55</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:38</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### D-gluco/D-fructo

![Structures](image1)

#### X = H, OMe

| X = H          | 6      | 64, 82 |
| X = OMe       |        | 85:15  |

#### X = H, X = OMe

| X = H          | 24     | 31, 78 |
| X = N₃        | 4, 81  | 83     |
| X = F         | 8, 78  |        |
| X = OBn       | 4, 72  |        |

#### X = N₃, F, H, OBn

| X = N₃       | 31, 77 |
| H:85:15     | 78–80  |
| X = F:90:10 | 77, 78 |
| X = OMe:79:21 | 31, 78 |
| X = SH:0:1 | 76     |

#### X = N₃, F, H, OMe, SH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X = N₃, Y = N₃, F, H; X = N₃, Y = OMe; X = N₃, Y = O(CH₂)₆OH</th>
<th>6, 22–63</th>
<th>64, 84–86</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### L-ido

| X = N₃          | 4, 76  | 83     |
| X = F          | 8, 73  |        |

| X = N₃, F       |        |        |

---

[References](#)
### Higher Carbon Sugars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l-ido</td>
<td>20:80</td>
<td>8,55</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X = F, Y = N&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-rhamno (6-deoxy-l-manno)</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-talo/l-tagato</td>
<td>60:40</td>
<td>X = N&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt; 8,34 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X = F 8,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-glycero-d-gluco</td>
<td>0:1</td>
<td>20,55</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R = OBn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-glycero-d-gluco</td>
<td>0:1</td>
<td>20,61</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.2 Substrates of L-Fucose Isomerase

#### 6.2.1 Pentoses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85:15</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>8, 93, 99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 6.2.2 Hexoses and Higher Carbon Sugars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>89:11</td>
<td>55% aldose, 78% ketose</td>
<td>89, 93, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90, 96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.3 Substrates of L-Rhamnose Isomerase

#### 6.3.1 Pentoses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l-lyxo</td>
<td></td>
<td>78% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-ribo</td>
<td></td>
<td>82% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hexoses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Time (h), Yields (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D-</strong>-allo/D-psico</td>
<td>90% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D-gulo/D-sorbo</strong></td>
<td>72% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L-manno/L-fructo</strong></td>
<td>76% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L-rhamno (6-deoxy-L-manno)</strong></td>
<td>90% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L-talo/L-tagato</strong></td>
<td>75% ketose</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acknowledgements. Glycogroup appreciates continuous support from the Austrian Fonds zur Förderung der wissenschaftlichen Forschung (FWF), Vienna (Projects 7335, 8415, 10067, 10805, and 13593 CHE). Novo Nordisk A/S is thanked for their gift of Sweetzyme T.

7 References

bial aldolases in carbohydrate synthesis. In: Bednarski MD, Simon ES (eds) Enzymes 
in carbohydrate synthesis. ACS Symposium Series 466, American Chemical Society, 
118:7647
81. Simmonds MSJ, Kite GC, Porter EA (1999) Taxonomic distribution of iminosugars and 
their biological activities. In: Stütz AE (ed) Iminosugars as glycosidase inhibitors. Wiley-
VCH, Weinheim, p 8
33:7125
11:607
86. Wrodnigg TM, Gaderbauer W, Greimel P, Häusler H, Sprenger FK, Stütz AE, Virgona C, 
173:5144
Asymmetry 4:1183
60:7360
The Amadori and Heyns Rearrangements: Landmarks in the History of Carbohydrate Chemistry or Unrecognized Synthetic Opportunities?

Tanja M. Wrodnigg, Brigitte Eder

Glycogroup, Institut für Organische Chemie der Technischen Universität Graz, Stremayrgasse 16, 8010 Graz, Austria
E-mail: wrodnigg@orgc.tu-graz.ac.at

The Amadori and Heyns rearrangements have been known to carbohydrate chemists for decades. Following an outline of their historical development, a survey of the biological aspects, applications and alternative approaches will be given. Due to their nature, both reactions suffer from a variety of preparative shortcomings; nonetheless, they are very useful bearing in mind that no protecting group manipulations are required. Naturally occurring rearrangement products can play very important biological roles. For example, in the Maillard reaction cascade, this type of rearrangement reactions appear to be involved in the pathological effects of diabetes, Alzheimer's disease and aging processes in general. Consequently, alternative means of synthetic access to the corresponding products have also been investigated. Both rearrangements appear to be highly underrated as useful methods for natural products synthesis.

Keywords: Amadori rearrangement, Heyns rearrangement, Amadori products, 2-Amino-2-deoxysugars, 1-Amino-1-deoxysugars, d-Glucosamine derivatives

1 Introduction .......................................................... 116

2 Amadori Rearrangement ................................................. 117
  2.1 Historical Development ........................................... 117
  2.2 Examples of Other Amines ....................................... 122
    2.2.1 Amino Acids .................................................. 122
    2.2.2 Aminosugars .................................................. 123
    2.2.3 Polymeric Amines ............................................. 124
  2.3 Biological Aspects ............................................... 124
  2.4 Structural Investigations ........................................ 127
  2.5 Applications of the Amadori Rearrangement .................. 128
  2.6 Preparative Limitations ......................................... 132
  2.7 Alternative Synthetic Approaches to Amadori Rearrangement Products .............................. 133

3 Heyns Rearrangement .................................................. 136
  3.1 Historical Development ........................................... 136
  3.2 Range of Components ............................................. 139
  3.3 Biological Aspects ............................................... 141
  3.4 Limitations of the Heyns Rearrangement ..................... 142
  3.5 Applications of the Heyns Rearrangement .................... 144

4 Summary and Conclusions ............................................. 148

5 References ............................................................... 148
1 Introduction

The Amadori [1] and Heyns [1b, 2] rearrangements are two well-known reactions in carbohydrate chemistry. Both were discovered several decades ago and are closely interrelated with respect to their mechanisms and their outcomes.

The Amadori rearrangement is a reaction between $\alpha$-hydroxy aldehydes and suitable amines leading to $\alpha$-amino ketones. When applied to aldoses, for example, $\alpha$-D-glucose (1), it allows the introduction of an amino group at position C-1 with concomitant isomerization leading to 1-amino-1-deoxyketoses such as 2 (Scheme 1).

The Heyns rearrangement follows, in principle, the same pattern but employs $\alpha$-hydroxy ketones as starting materials. Applied to free sugars, this reaction starts from a ketose such as $\alpha$-D-fructose (3) and proceeds via a glycosylamine to the corresponding 2-amino-2-deoxyaldoses 4 and 5 (Scheme 2). Due to the nature of the intermediate, both epimers at position C-2 can be formed.

The two rearrangement reactions are known as the initial step in the Maillard reaction cascade [3], the non-enzymatic browning of food. This reaction sequence takes place during cooking, baking and preservation processes and is of great importance for taste, aroma, flavor and color of food [4]. The reacting components are reducing sugars and free amino groups of amino acids or proteins and the reaction occurs extensively during food preparation where it affects nutritional quality and may be accompanied by the formation of toxic substances [5]. Additional aspects of the Maillard reaction have arisen from the discovery that it also occurs in the human body (see Sect. 2.2).

A great variety of rearrangement products are accessible just by choosing the starting materials as they are as simple as free sugars and almost all sorts of amines, bearing in mind that no protecting group manipulations are required for this kind of reactions.
2 Amadori Rearrangement

2.1 Historical Development

In the years 1925 to 1931, Amadori [6] claimed to have obtained two types of “composti”, “A” (6, 7) and “B” (8, 9), from the reactions of D-glucose with p-toluidine, p-anisidine and p-phenetidine under different reaction conditions (Scheme 3). Referring to older literature, he suggested that his labile “composto A” was the same product as that previously isolated by Irvine and Gilmour [7] when they reacted D-glucose and p-toluidine in alcohol at the boiling point of the solvent. Amadori defined it as a mixture of α- and β-glucosyl amines 6 and 7. Besides the expected N-phenyl-D-glucosylamines he observed isomeric products when he reacted D-glucose with the amines under consideration in substantia and at the time regarded the stable compounds obtained as related to Schiff bases 8 and 9, having the same properties as the compounds described by Claus and Ree [8].

In the 1930s, Kuhn and Dansi reinvestigated the behavior of D-glucose with p-toluidine [9] in substantia as well as in alcoholic solution and postulated that the stable product obtained by Amadori was in fact the product of a novel rearrangement. Subsequently, Kuhn and Weygand established a mechanism (Scheme 4) [10], by which initially a reaction between the anomeric position of aldoses 1 with an amino group takes place leading to glycosylamines 10. Ring opening occurs to form a Schiff base 12, which is in equilibrium with its enol form 13 (enamine-aldimine tautomerism). This enol can be stabilized by formation of the 1-amino-1-deoxyketosugar 2, which undergoes ring closure to the corresponding hemiacetal. This new reaction was coined the Amadori rearrangement by the authors.

A closer look into the history of the Amadori rearrangement reveals that the reaction between D-glucose and amines such as aniline had been explored by

\[
\text{composto "A"}
\]

\[
\text{composto "B"}
\]

Scheme 3
several workers decades before Amadori’s important contribution. This is not unexpected because the compounds employed were classical reagents and had been known and available for more than a century; eminent chemists such as Schiff, Fischer, and Sorokin, just to mention a few, had worked in this area of early carbohydrate chemistry.

Schiff, for example, had included carbohydrates in his studies on the formation of Schiff bases from aldehydes and amino compounds. He heated D-glucose with aniline or with p-toluidine in substantia [11], and described that these components, under loss of water, formed yellow glass-like condensation products. These supported his suggestions on the formation of Schiff bases from aldehydes and suitable aromatic amines [12].

Around the same time, Sachsse [13] investigated the reaction of aniline with lactose and reported that he obtained two different products or a mixture of both depending on the reaction conditions employed.

Subsequently, Sorokin reported [14] the isolation of products with different properties from those of Schiff, when he reacted D-glucose and aniline at lower
temperatures in ethanol. Whereas Schiff had obtained amorphous materials by melting the components together, Sorokin isolated a crystalline compound [15], which he coined dextrose anilide. From the data supplied, which are typical for glycosylamines, it is safe to assume that he had isolated such a compound.

From these reports and by comparison with the conditions known to induce the Amadori rearrangement, it can be concluded that Schiff had already obtained the rearrangement products by carrying out the reaction without solvent and at elevated temperatures. Sorokin, on the other hand, preparing his products in an alcoholic solution and at lower temperatures, was able to isolate the comparably less stable glycosylamines. Sachsse would have found both, the unstable glycosylamine and the stable 1-aminodeoxyketose, depending on the reaction conditions employed.

In context with his interest in the formation of new products from sugars, Fischer focused his attention on phenylhydrazine as the basic component. He detected that the reactions of D-glucose on the one hand and D-fructose on the other with phenylhydrazine led to the same product [16]. When he reacted cane sugar with sulfuric acid followed by phenylhydrazine he initially isolated “phenylglucosazone” which he dissolved in ethanolic acetic acid to obtain the rearrangement product “isoglucosamine” (1-amino-1-deoxyfructose) [17]. The properties of this compound he found to be very closely related to “laevulose” (fructose) and he concluded that the relationship between “isoglucosamine” and fructose was the same as that between D-glucosamine and glucose. Consequently, the formation of this “isoglucoaminol” had to take place involving a change from the dextrose to the laevulose series. Fischer also suggested that this was just one special case of a more general type of reaction.

Many years later, several groups conducted investigations into the mechanism of the osazone formation steps and concluded that an Amadori rearrangement is involved in this reaction cascade [18] (Scheme 5, 14 to 16). Aldoses 14
react with phenylhydrazine to give phenylhydrazones 15. These compounds can isomerize to Amadori rearrangement products 16, whose ketone function may react with another molecule of phenylhydrazine to form 17. The loss of aniline via intermediate 18 can take place either at position C-1 or C-2 to form both possible iminophenylhydrazones 19 and 20. The last step of the sequence is the exchange of the imino moiety with a third molecule of phenylhydrazine to give osazone 21. This view was strongly supported by Weygand’s results with tritium-labeled components [19].

Remarkably, according to these pieces of information, Fischer had correctly interpreted his observations. An interesting fact in this context is that Amadori referred to the studies by Schiff, Sachsse, Irvine as well as those of Claus and Ree, but did not consider Fischer’s important contribution. Amadori also had reported yields of around 70% of the \( p \)-phenetidino product but researchers following his work failed to reproduce these results. Improvements were made by Weygand [20], who was the first to recognize that both yields and product purity improved considerably when the reaction was performed under acidic conditions; a very important discovery in connection with this reaction.

In 1955, Hodge [1a] reviewed the available literature on the Amadori rearrangement, wherein he supplied experimental procedures and the physical properties of many Amadori rearrangement products, mainly from \( d \)-glucose and arylamines as well as some selected aliphatic amines. He also suggested that “this rearrangement may occasionally have gone unnoticed” in the older literature.

The influence of the basicity of the amine on the rearrangement was investigated by Rosen and co-workers [21]. They modified the conditions by employing aqueous pyridinium chloride as well as pyridinium acetate buffered glacial acetic acid as reaction media, and from these results concluded that the Amadori rearrangement had to be an example of general acid-base catalysis.

The influence of differently substituted arylamines on the outcome and the directing effects of \( o \)-, \( p \)- and \( m \)-substituents were reported by Micheel and Schleppinghoff [22].

At this point, except for a few special cases [1a], only rearrangement products from \( N \)-arylamines had been isolated. Mitts and Hixon [23] had failed in inducing an Amadori rearrangement using \( N \)-alkylamines under the reaction conditions known to be successful thus far. They could only isolate the glycosylamines. Subsequently, productive reaction conditions for this type of amines were found by Hodge and Rist [24], using a 1:1 mixture of ethanol/ethyl malonate as the solvent system. Micheel [25] employed dry oxalic acid as acidic component to obtain the corresponding ammonium oxalate salts. By this modification of the procedure, alkylamines were found to yield rearrangement products very easily.

In 1962, based on his experience with the reaction and results of other workers, Micheel [26] suggested a mechanism (Scheme 6) different from the one proposed by Kuhn and Weygand [10]. The initially formed glycosylamine 10 reacts with a second molecule of the amine to give a 1,1-bis-\( N \)-aminal 22. In the following step, one of the nitrogens is protonated leading to intermediate 23. Under loss of one molecule of the amine a carbonium ion 24 is generated, which, in turn, can undergo the rearrangement to the final product 2 via 25.
This mechanism was challenged by Palm and Simon [18c, 27]. Employing tritium-labeled substrates these workers showed that the 1,1-bis-amino derivative 22 is not necessarily an intermediate of the rearrangement. The rate-determining step was found to be the abstraction of the proton at C-2 in the initially formed glycosylamine, supporting the observed general base and acid catalysis.

Following these observations, the influence of various borane-derived Lewis acids was probed by Yoshimura and co-workers [28]. Triethylborane exhibited no beneficial effect and difluoro(phenyl)borane was found to have a weaker catalytic activity than acetic acid. However, boron trifluoride and ethoxy difluoroborane showed stronger catalytic effects than acetic acid in the initial stage.
of the reaction, but colored side products were formed due to decomposition of
the glycosylamine.

Nowadays, besides some special cases, typical reactions are performed in an
alcoholic solution of the sugar in the presence of one equivalent of glacial acid
as acidic catalyst.

2.2 Examples of Other Amines

2.2.1 Amino Acids

In addition to the investigations with aldoses and simple aryl- and alkylamines,
the Amadori rearrangement was probed with a wide range of combinations of
sugars with suitable amines. Gottschalk investigated the reaction conditions of
the rearrangement between aldoses and amino acids and synthesized the first
amino acid fructose adducts, by boiling the components in methanol, the car-
boxyl group of the amino acids providing the acidic catalyst for the Amadori
rearrangement. This work opened a new and biologically important area [29].

Amino acids as amine components were also employed by Micheil and Fro-
wein, by Heyns and co-workers, as well as by several other groups [30].

Furthermore, the Heyns group investigated the reactions of D-glucuronic
acid with various amino acids and primary as well as secondary aliphatic ami-
nes [31]. They extended the range of amino components by employing taurine
or aminomethansulfonic acids as basic components [32]. The reaction condi-
tions were found to be different from the ones for the aminocarboxylic acids as,
in the presence of oxalic acid as the acidic catalyst, only the sodium salts of the
aminosulfonic acid could be successfully reacted to give the desired rearrange-
ment products.

The synthesis and characterization of Amadori products with ω-amino acids
was conducted by Feather [33] who employed them as model substances for
biological studies.

The formation of amino acids as degradation products from the reaction of
D-glucose and D-xylose with primary amines was investigated by Severin and
co-workers [34]. They showed that the initially formed Amadori products either
undergo oxidative degradation or give various amino acid compounds, such as
N-propylalanine 26, N²-acetyl-N⁶-(1-carboxyethyl)-L-lysine 27, N-(carboxymeto-
thal)- 28, and N-(1-carboxyethyl)-alanine 29, respectively, as well as N-substi-
tuted 4,5,6-trihydroxy-α-aminohexanoic acids 30 (Scheme 7).

Additionally, the amino groups of peptides [35] and, at a later stage, proteins
[36] were found to react with D-glucose to give Amadori rearrangement pro-
ducts.

The Amadori rearrangement with amino acids as the basic component can be
performed under self catalysis of the carboxylic acidic part of the molecule, but
for better yields various additional acidic catalysts have also been used, depen-
ding on the starting materials.
2.2.2 Aminosugars

Micheel and co-workers employed D-glucosamine as the amine component (Scheme 8) [37]. 4,6-O-Benzylidene-D-glucose (32) was reacted with 1,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-D-glucosamine (31) to give the expected glucosylamine 33, which underwent rearrangement in ethanolic solution containing one equivalent of triethylamine and glacial acetic acid. The protecting groups were removed to obtain the free Amadori rearrangement product, an N-linked disaccharide 34.
Related disaccharides were synthesized by Klemer and Funcke in the reaction of \( \text{d-glucosamine} \) and \( \text{d-galactosamine} \) with \( \text{d-gluco-} \) and \( \text{d-galacto-} \)-configured hexuronic acids. Interestingly, good yields were obtained, although the rearrangement required ring contraction of the glycosyl amine leading to furanoid systems [38].

2.2.3

**Polymeric Amines**

Amadori products were also prepared from carbohydrates and polyvinylamine (35, Scheme 9) [39]. It was found that the initial products, such as 36, undergo further reactions thus cross-linking the polymer strains intramolecularly or intermolecularly leading to structures like 37 and 38, respectively.

2.3

**Biological Aspects**

Investigations into the formation and biological significance of 1-amino-1-deoxyketoses have become an interesting and important area, following the clarification of structure and behavior of the products. Gottschalk published
evidence that the carbohydrate-amine linkage in the physiologically important mucoproteins is that of 1-amino-1-deoxy-2-ketoses [40].

Intermediates in the biosynthesis of tryptophans were also found to be Amadori rearrangement products of different aldoses with anthranilic acid such as 39, derived from the corresponding phosphorylated forms 40 in cells (Scheme 10) [41].

An Amadori rearrangement was also found to take place as the first step in the reaction of d-glucose (1) with 2,4,5-triamino-6-hydroxypyrimidine (41) to give substituted pterine derivatives 42 (Scheme 11) [42]. Such compounds are important intermediates for the synthesis of folic acids and hydroxyalkylpterine and are of interest in context with the biogenesis of pterines 43 [43].

More recently, it has been shown that N-(1-deoxy-d-fructos-1-yl) derivatives of mammalian proteins are formed in vivo [44]. The process, which is called non-enzymatic glycation (formerly erroneously termed glycosylation), may be important in the pathology of diabetes [45] and of Alzheimer’s disease [46], the formation of cataracts [47] as well as other aging processes [48]. The precise role of the Maillard reaction in the process of aging still remains a matter of specu-
lation, but the inter-relationship between the time-related appearance of Maillard reaction related cross-linking in proteins, cells and tissues and the overall aging process appears indisputable [49]. As not much is known about the chemical nature of the cross-linked units, several model reactions and different mechanisms for this process have been discussed [50]. For a better understanding of the impact which the Maillard reaction has, for example, on aging and diabetes, as well as for the development of effective therapeutic methods to prevent advanced glycation product accumulation in tissues, it is an absolute prerequisite to unambiguously establish the chemical nature of the major protein cross-links derived from this reaction [51].

Several Amadori products, notably those containing aromatic amino acid residues, have been found to behave as direct-acting mutagens in Salmonella typhimurium his strains [52] (i.e., in the Ames test), and some (e.g., nitrosated fructose-tryptophan and fructose-serotonin compounds) are known to induce DNA repair synthesis in cells of the human HeLa S3 cell line [53].

Furthermore, Amadori compounds and their degradation products have been reported to possess the ability to affect the adhesion and aggregation properties of cancer cells [54].

As a sequence of equilibrium reactions, the Amadori rearrangement is theoretically expected to be a reversible process [55], and this can have significant implications provided the factors promoting the reverse reaction can be identified and eventually controlled under physiological conditions. The tendency of the products to undergo a non-enzymatic reverse reaction into enolamines, and subsequently into free sugars and amino acids, has been demonstrated, when it was recently found from the data obtained on the kinetics of N-(5'-O-phospho-β-D-ribosyl)anthranilate ketol isomerase (EC 5.3.1.24) that this enzyme involved in the biosynthesis of tryptophan catalyzes the reversible Amadori rearrangement reaction of anthranilic acid with ribose 5-phosphate [56]. This reverse reaction might limit protein glycation and prevent further tissue damage. The reversibility of the Amadori reaction was also supported by the identification of per-O-(trimethylsilyl) derivatives of aldoses generated from thermal decomposition of N-(1-deoxy-D-fructopyranos-1-yl)proline [57].

The non-enzymatic glycation of aminophospholipids supposedly plays an important role for lipid oxidation in vivo. Membranous functional lipids are vital for the maintenance of cellular integrity and survival and their non-enzymatic glycation could conceivably cause inactivation of receptors, cross-linking of aminophospholipids and proteins, membrane lipid peroxidation, and, consequently, cell death. Therefore, knowledge about both primary and secondary products from the reaction of D-glucose with aminophospholipids could provide a deeper insight into the mechanism of this advanced glycation end product initiated lipid oxidation. Related studies were conducted in an in vitro model system employing 1-deoxy-1-(2-hydroxyethylamino)-D-fructose. With the spectroscopic and chromatographic data obtained from this investigation it could be proven that Amadori products such as 44 (Scheme 12) are formed from D-glucose and phosphatidyl ethanolamine [58], which was also demonstrated by comparison with the outcome of the independent synthesis of aminophospholipid-linked Maillard products [59].
Fructose analogs modified at positions C-1, C-2 or C-6 are of interest for studies of parasite glucose transporters, because the glycolytic metabolism of d-glucose is the unique source of energy for the parasite *Trypanosoma brucei*, the causative agent of African sleeping sickness. In contrast to the mammalian erythrocyte glucose transporter, which only recognizes d-glucose, the one of the parasite also accepts d-fructose as a furanose ring. C-1-Aminodeoxyfructose derivatives were synthesized via an Amadori rearrangement and subsequently marked with the fluorescent dansyl group and their affinities for the glucose transporter were examined [60].

The carcinogenic and mutagenic effects of heterocyclic compounds [61] such as 45 and 46, which are formed during the Maillard reaction cascade, have been demonstrated (Scheme 13).

Other compounds can react with nitrite to nitroamine compounds, whereupon structures such as 47 are formed (Scheme 13), whose mutagenic and strongly carcinogenic effects are known [62]. This reaction may also occur in the stomach with nitrite from saliva.

2.4 Structural Investigations

The products resulting from Amadori rearrangement reactions, as free sugars, can exist in all of the typical sugar conformations; the acyclic form as well as the
furanoid and pyranoid $^5\text{C}_2$ and $^2\text{C}_5$ forms, and in addition, $\alpha$ and $\beta$ configurations are possible (Scheme 14).

Early structural studies were conducted by Kuhn and co-workers who determined the ring size of 1-aminodeoxy-$d$-fructose derivatives by methylation and degradation experiments [63]. For the 1-($p$-toluidinyl)fructose derivative they proved with this method the consequently most stable pyranoid conformation.

Qualitative and quantitative assessments of equilibrium mixtures of Amadori rearrangement products were performed employing $^{13}\text{C}$-NMR spectrometry [64]. Substituents at C-6, C-4 and C-6 showed considerable influence on the equilibrium; the 4,6-$O$-benzylidene derivative, for example, was found to be in the open-chain form only, because ring closure of $O$-5 with the carbonyl function was energetically and sterically hindered. The conformation of compounds substituted at C-6 depended on the electron-withdrawing effect of the substituent. The lower the electron density at position C-5, the lower is the tendency of ring closure, so that the equilibrium is found on the side of the open-chain form.

$^1\text{H}$-NMR spectroscopy was subsequently investigated as a tool for the identification of Amadori products [65]. Isomeric mixtures of fructose derivatives of amino acid products in solution [66] as well as characterization of glycated proteins [67] were examined by exploiting this method.

2.5 Applications of the Amadori Rearrangement

An early application of the Amadori rearrangement reaction was the synthesis of lactulose 51 (Scheme 15) [68]. Reaction of lactose 48 with $p$-toluidine in pyridine/acetic acid furnished the corresponding rearrangement product 49, which, after catalytic hydrogenolysis to 1-amino-1-deoxyketose 50 and subsequent deamination, gave ketose 51. This was the first alternative approach to lactulose, which had been synthesized via a Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement [69].
A few years later Grünnagel and Haas used the same approach to synthesis d-tagatose from d-galactose via the Amadori rearrangement product 1-deoxy-1-dibenzylamino-d-tagatose [70].

Paulsen found that an intramolecular Amadori rearrangement of 5-amino-5-deoxy-d-xylose (52) under appropriate reaction conditions led to 1,5-dideoxy-1,5-imino-d-threo-pentulose (55), a direct precursor of 1,5-dideoxy-1,5-imino-xylitol (56) [71] (Scheme 16). When the temperature exceeded 0 °C or the acidic conditions became too strong, aromatization of the enamine-ol 54 took place, leading to 3-pyridinol. Release of strain by ring enlargement and the all-equatorial arrangement of substituents in the product after the rearrangement are strong driving forces of this intramolecular Amadori reaction. The sequence is a nice application of the rearrangement allowing access to a very important class of sugar analogs with basic nitrogen instead of the oxygen in the ring. Such compounds have been found to be powerful and highly useful glycosidase inhibitors [72].
Another example of an intramolecular Amadori rearrangement has been investigated with monosaccharide 57, as well as of the corresponding d-manno- and d-galacto-configured sugars (Scheme 17). The aim was to determine the influence of the structure of the sugar component in the rearrangement products such as 58 on the overall course of these reactions and on the factors that contribute to the formation of the keto amine [73]. In particular, the knowledge on products from the reaction of, for example, D-galactose with endogenous peptides could provide a deeper insight into the mechanism of pathophysiology in hereditary galactosaemia; which was suggested to be related to the non-enzymatic galactose-dependent modification of proteins.

N-(1-Deoxyfructos-1-yl)dipeptides, such as 59 and 60 (Scheme 18), the rearrangement products of D-glucose and L-isoleucyl-L-aspartic acid and L-valoyl-L-aspartic acid, respectively, were found to be specific inhibitors of endopeptidase (EC 3.4.24.11) [74].

![Scheme 17](image1.png)

![Scheme 18](image2.png)
This enzyme hydrolyses enkephalins, for example, tyr-gly-gly-phe-met or tyr-gly-gly-phe-leu, which are neuropeptides, and endogenous ligands of opiate receptors and are of importance for physiological suppression of pain [75]. Compounds 59 and 60 were isolated after an Amadori rearrangement with the unprotected peptides in more than 70% yield and not only exhibited specific activity against metallopeptidases, but inhibited endopeptidase (EC 3.4.24.11) practically exclusively.

In the course of a project concerned with the synthesis of glycosidase inhibitors, interest arose in a simple, reasonably versatile, and efficient synthetic route to 1-aminodeoxy derivatives of the powerful d-glucosidase and invertase inhibitor 2,5-dideoxy-2,5-imino-d-mannitol [76] (Scheme 19). Bearing in mind that the release of ring strain in the five-membered ring 61 is a strong driving force for the quantitative isomerization [77] into the corresponding d-fructopyranose isomer, it was expected that an Amadori rearrangement reaction would introduce the desired amino group at C-1 with concomitant formation of the d-fructopyranose derivative. By reaction of glucofuranose 61 with a range of amines
The corresponding rearrangement products 62, 64 and 66 were isolated in unusually high yields of more than 95%. These, in turn, were cyclized by intramolecular reductive amination to furnish inhibitors 63, 65 and 67, respectively, which exhibited very interesting biological activities [78].

Aminopolysaccharides have attracted considerable attention because of their structures. These are generally different from those of normal polysaccharides such as cellulose, chitin being one of the most prominent examples. The synthesis of such polymers is an important prerequisite to elucidating the biological functions of naturally occurring aminopolysaccharides. A thermal polymerization reaction (Scheme 20) by Amadori rearrangement of 6-amino-6-deoxy-D-glucose (68) was employed to yield the corresponding aminopolysaccharide 69 [79].

2.6 Preparative Limitations

The Amadori rearrangement reaction suffers from a few preparative drawbacks. In many cases, as well as the desired rearrangement product, mixtures with the isomeric glycosyl amine precursors are obtained and these are frequently difficult to separate. Furthermore, the reaction is very sensitive to hydrolytic conditions. Thus, the rearrangement of the glycosylamine and the hydrolysis of the latter back to starting material may compete depending on the acidic catalyst employed. In addition, products are not infinitely stable under the reaction conditions and decomposition reactions can take place. These very easily enter the Maillard cascade, leading to unwanted side products such as deoxyosones which can start a complex series of reactions, for example, dehydration, cyclization, oxidation, or fragmentation, resulting in an abundance of secondary products.

It is recognized that the reaction is dependent on four factors: i.e. the type of sugar and amine to be reacted, the reaction time, the temperature, as well as the catalyst employed.

Regarding the amine component, ammonia is a special case because it is a nucleophile and also a strong base. A survey of the reactions of free sugars with aqueous ammonia was provided by Kort in 1970 [80]. A large number of products can be found in such reaction mixtures, depending on the conditions employed. Short reaction times, low temperature, and the absence of catalyst arrest the reaction before heterocyclic compounds can be formed. The products obtained are the same as those formed by action of alkali on sugars, whereby a Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein (LdB-AvE) rearrangement (see An-
gyal, this vol.) takes place, leading to epimerization reactions. With prolonged reaction times, the reaction runs faster and becomes more complex and mainly degradation products are formed leading to substituted imidazoles and pyrazines. No Amadori rearrangement products can be detected with ammonia as basic component.

Similar problems can occur when the reaction is carried out with other strongly basic amines. The more basic the amino components are, the higher is the chance of epimerization at C-2. This leads to subsequent side reactions following the LdB-AvE isomerization resulting in unwanted degradation of the intermediates.

The longer the reaction times and the stronger the acid catalyst, the more Maillard decomposition reactions can take place. This was substantiated by the vacuum thermolysis of the Amadori product deriving from D-glucose and L-proline (1-deoxy-1-L-proline-D-fructose), from which 22 different products were identified [81]. Amongst others, dihydrofurans, dihydropyran, pyrons, a methylcyclopentenolone, pyrrolidine amides and formic, acetic, and propionic acid, substituted furfurylamines, a diazepine, proline, and pyrrolidines, maltol, pyrrolidine amides of formic, acetic and propionic acid, a γ-lactone, as well as 2-pyrroline-substituted furans were found to have formed. Several bicyclic compounds have also been isolated from the reaction of D-glucose with methylamine [82] or glycine [83], including furans, pyrroles, pyridines, and a pyrogallol derivative. However, the thermal polymerization and degradation processes are not well elucidated due to the difficulty in obtaining reasonable quantities of the desired products via the Amadori rearrangement.

2.7 Alternative Synthetic Approaches to Amadori Rearrangement Products

Whereas in a few, unusual cases quantitative yields have been obtained from Amadori rearrangement reactions [78], they frequently range between 30 and 70%. Discouraged by the above-mentioned problems (Sect. 2.6), many workers interested in the products have chosen to synthesize such compounds by other, more reliable methods.

Xenakis and co-workers [84] converted 2,3:4,5-di-O-isopropylidene-β-D-fructopyranose (70) into triflate 71. After displacement of the sulfonate with a nitrogen nucleophile, the corresponding protected Amadori compounds 72 were obtained in moderate to good yields (Scheme 21). The same approach was chosen by Lopez and Gruenwedel [85] when they needed larger quantities of pure products for biological and physiological studies designed to monitor the binding of aromatic Amadori compounds to DNA via intercalation. Winkel and co-workers [86] subsequently reported the deprotection sequence of the Amadori products thus obtained to form 73.

Another access was exploited by Walton and McPherson (Scheme 22) [87]. Reductive amination of D-arabino-hexos-2-ulose (74) with various amines such as L-valine, L-leucine, L-methionine, L-phenylalanine or 6-aminohexanoic acid, in the presence of cyanoborohydride, resulted in the formation of the corresponding N-(1-deoxy-D-fructos-1-yl)-adducts 2, but was accompanied by re-
Scheme 21

Scheme 22
duction of C-2 to give both epimers 75 and 76 as side products (Scheme 22). Separation was reported to be very difficult and could only be achieved by column chromatography on cellulose, providing the desired compounds in yields around 40%.

This problem was overcome by changing the starting material to the protected 2,3:4,5-di-O-isopropylidene-β-D-arabino-hexos-2-ulo-2,6-pyranose (77) (Scheme 23). Reductive amination employing the same amines circumvented the formation of side products improving the yield of the reduction step to around 75%. Removal of the protecting groups from 78 led to the desired products 2 in fair overall yields.

This method was also employed by Kojić-Prodić in the synthesis of the corresponding L-tyrosine derived Amadori product; the conformational properties were also examined [88].

Using a similar line of approach, Ohfune and his group produced aldehyde 77 from 2,3:4,5-di-O-isopropylidene-D-fructopyranose (70) by Swern oxidation (Scheme 24) [89]. Reductive coupling of this intermediate with unprotected or
partially protected amino acids was successfully achieved exploiting NaBH₃CN as reducing agent to yield the desired Amadori products 79.

A synthesis based on a novel Mitsunobu glycosylation procedure as the key step was recently reported by van Boom and co-workers [90]. They reacted the amino acid derived 2-nitrobenzenesulfonamides 81 with 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-D-glucose (80) under Mitsunobu conditions (Scheme 25) to obtain fully protected glycosylamines 82, which upon deprotection rearranged to the corresponding Amadori products 73 in overall yields of 70–80%.

1,2-Anhydro-3,4,5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-D-mannitol (83), which is available from D-mannitol in a few simple synthetic steps, can also be employed as starting material for the synthesis of Amadori products (Scheme 26) [91]. The epoxide was opened regioselectively at position C-1 to azide 84, which was reduced to the amine 85. Activated α-hydroxycarboxylic acids, such as L-lactic acid, can undergo nucleophilic attack in a S₂N₂ reaction leading to the substituted D-mannitol derivative 87. Subsequent oxidation of the remaining free hydroxy group and deprotection furnished the Amadori compounds 73.

The same epoxide 83 can be opened by the amino function of protected amino acids 88 with retention of configuration at this center leading to the Amadori product precursor 89, which, in turn, after oxidation and deprotection, can be converted into the desired Amadori compounds, such as 73 (Scheme 27) [91].

3
Heyns Rearrangement

3.1
Historical Development

In 1898, Lobry de Bruyn mentioned that “chitosamine” [d-glucosamine (4)] was formed during the reaction of D-fructose 3 with ammonia but he was not able to isolate the syrupy product from the reaction mixture [92]. It was Breuer [93]
who successfully performed the crystallization, obtaining d-glucosamine in crystalline form from the corresponding hydrochloride. This allowed first initiatives to investigate this paradigmatic example of a reaction, later coined the Heyns rearrangement.

During their studies of the reaction of free sugars with amines, N-aryl-d-fructosylamines were synthesized by Sorokin [14], Kuhn and Birkofer [94], as well as Barry and Honeymoon [95] but, in contrast to N-arylaldosylamines, these compounds could not be induced, under the conditions applied, to rearrange into the desired α-aminocarbonyl compounds.

Heyns and Koch succeeded [96] in confirming the structure of the rearrangement product from the reaction of d-fructose and ammonium chloride in the presence of phosphate and proposed a mechanism (Scheme 28). They pointed out that both epimers at position C-2, d-glucosamine (4) and d-mannosamine (5), were formed with the thermodynamically more stable compound 4 preponderating and recognized that this reaction is related to the Lobry de Bruyn –
Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement; i.e. dependent on the basicity and nucleophilic properties of the amine employed. The proposed mechanism is closely related to the one of the Amadori rearrangement. Ketose 3 reacts with the amine to produce ketosylamine 90 which forms Schiff base 91. This undergoes isomerization to 1,2-eneamine-ol 92 which subsequently produces epimeric 2-amino-2-deoxyaldose derivatives 4 and 5.

Optimized conditions to improve yields, such as the range of temperature, pressure and the quantity of liquid ammonia as well as the influence of the addition of ammonium chloride, were investigated by Heyns and Meinecke [97]. Despite all efforts, yields usually did not exceed 35% when the basic component was limited to ammonia.

Around the same time, Erickson investigated the reaction of long-chain aliphatic amines with free sugars and discovered that ketoses were more reactive
than aldoses [98a] with this type of nucleophilic component, parallelling the chemistry of the Amadori rearrangement. He also noted that the products, being \( \alpha \)-amino aldehydes, were more reactive towards amines than the ketoses he had started from [98b]. A subsequent reaction with a second equivalent of amine resembled the osazone formation. This finding confirmed the relationships between this reaction, the osazone formation, the Amadori rearrangement and the Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein reaction, as well as the Maillard reaction cascade.

Carson [99] investigated the behavior of different aliphatic amines towards D-fructose, and encountered problems of undesired disubstitution, epimerization, as well as lack of stability of the 2-amino-2-deoxyglucose derivatives during his studies. He performed the reaction in a two-step sequence by initial formation of the ketosylamine, which was isolated as a crystalline intermediate, followed by the rearrangement reaction in methanolic solutions containing glacial acetic acid. These conditions allowed access to increased yields that could be further improved employing benzylamine as the nucleophilic component.

Heyns and co-workers made significant contributions to this field that he called “Amadori like rearrangement”, “retro Amadori ketosylamine rearrangement” and “fructosylamine rearrangement”. The reaction was soon termed the “Carson-Heyns rearrangement” and is now known as the Heyns rearrangement.

Interesting in this context is the fact that Fischer had already included D-fructose in his studies on the osazone formation [16, 17] and, consequently, would have conducted the Heyns rearrangement quite early in the history of carbohydrate chemistry (see Sect. 1.1).

### 3.2 Range of Components

Heyns investigated the reactions of different amines with a range of ketoses. Whereas the reaction of D-fructose with liquid ammonia led to D-glucosamine, no such reaction took place with L-sorbose. Either the starting material remained unchanged or, at elevated temperatures, decomposition was observed. Contrasting this result, reaction of L-sorbose with \( \text{N-} \)-benzyl-, \( \text{N-} \)-butyl-, \( \text{N-} \)-hexyl-, and \( \text{N-} \)-cyclohexyl-L-sorbosylamine gave the corresponding crystalline rearrangement products in yields ranging from 20 to 30\% [100].

Consequently, amino acids were investigated and the products were coined “2-\( \text{N-} \)-amino acid-2-deoxyaldoses” [101]. In analogy to the Amadori rearrangement, the acid catalysis of the carboxyl function in the molecule is not always sufficient to induce the rearrangement, so that an additional catalyst, such as ammonium chloride, oxalic acid or glacial acid, is required in some cases. From di- and tripeptides, like gly-gly, gly-leu, gly-tyr, leu-gly, gly-gly-leu and D-fructose, Heyns and Rolle obtained the corresponding “glucose-peptides” [102]. Structural analysis of the products stemming from the reaction of D-fructose with gelatine [103] showed that in the main component the sugar was attached to the \( \varepsilon \)-amino group of lysine.

Reaction conditions such as the catalytic effect of different organic acids on the rearrangement, the influence of the basicity of the amino component, the
effects of different solvent systems, as well as the distribution of epimers, were thoroughly investigated. The reversibility of the rearrangement was also probed by the Heyns group. In addition, the influence of the sugars’ configurations on the outcome was compared employing D-fructose, L-sorbose, D-tagatose, as well as L-psicose [104].

Subsequent experiments showed that piperidine with D-fructose gave D-glucose, and that morpholine, dicyclohexylamine as well as tertiary amines converted D-fructose into D-psicose without detectable formation of Heyns rearrangement products. Employing secondary amines such as pyrrolidine, the corresponding Heyns rearrangement products could be obtained very easily, contrasting results with other cyclic amines, for example, piperidine, hexamethylene imine (azepane) and other open-chain amines such as dimethyl-, diethyl-, or methylbenzylamine, which did not react [105].

The study of rearrangement products from D-xylulose (93) with amines and amino acids (Scheme 29) was very important to rationalize the general aspects concerning the tendency of rearrangement of different ketoses [106]. D-Xylulose underwent the rearrangement easily followed by D-fructose and L-sorbose. The same sequence was found for the tendency to form furanoid tautomers. This means that the open-chain conformation, which is required for the first step, the condensation between the carbonyl group and the amine, is more readily available than in the pyranose series, because of the higher ring strain of the five-membered ring. The proportion of epimer formation at C-2 was also investigated. In the reaction with glycine, the lyxo-configured product 96 was formed preferentially over the corresponding xylose 95 and was also degraded more rapidly. Consequently, with increased reaction times, the proportion of the D-xylo compound increased.

Substitution at positions O-5 and O-6 of various ketoses confirmed the suggestion that the open-chain tautomer is the substrate of the ketosylamine formation [107]. Not unexpectedly, NMR spectrometric studies on the configurations and conformations of a range of different rearrangement products demonstrated that the main tautomers were α- and β-pyranose forms in the 4C1 conformation, the configurations at C-2 depending on the starting material, but predominantly being the thermodynamically favored ones [65].
3.3 Biological Aspects

Early chemistry and first recognition of the biological importance of aminosugars date back to 1876, when Ledderhose discovered D-glucosamine (4) in the hydrolysis mixture of crayfish shell chitin [108]. More than 25 years later, Fischer and Leuchs succeeded in the chemical synthesis of this aminosugar (Scheme 30) exploiting the Kiliani – Fischer cyanohydrin procedure [109]. They employed D-arabinose (97) as the starting material, which reacted with ammonia to yield D-arabinosylamine (98). Addition of hydrocyanic acid led to the corresponding glucononitrile 99. Subsequent hydrolysis of the nitrile group to the corresponding amino acid 100, followed by lactone formation to 101 and reduction of the latter, furnished D-glucosamine (4) in very low yields. Subsequently, Kuhn and Kirschenlohr modified this synthesis reducing the nitrile group in 99 to the corresponding aldehyde, thus opening up a direct route to D-glucosamine (4) from the aminonitrile [110].

Aminosugars are of extraordinary biological importance in nature. Usually, they are found in the N-acetylated form or as sulfates and not as free bases. The corresponding aminopolysaccharides serve as scaffold substances and intercellular adhesives. Furthermore, they play an important role in the metabolism and are connected with the pathology of many diseases. Hexosamines are constituents of blood group determinants, partial structures of antibiotics, components

![Scheme 30](image)
of bacterial capsules as well as of immunospecific antibodies. For example, N-acetyllactosamine (102) is a very important subunit of the Lewis\(^x\) (103) (Scheme 31) epitope, which plays key roles in pathological processes such as cell adhesion, inflammatory reactions and metastasis. Inhibition of such intercellular interactions is considered a new strategy for the treatment of these diseases [111]. Consequently, synthetic approaches as well as the search for analogs and mimics have emerged as an important research field during the last decade.

Heyns rearrangement products are also intermediates in the non-enzymatic browning reaction of food and, similar to the Amadori rearrangement products, can enter the Maillard reaction cascade as mentioned above (Sect. 2.3). Heyns and co-workers have conducted investigations in this context [112].

Another example of biologically relevant rearrangement products is d-galactosaminuronic acid (2-amino-2-deoxy-d-galacturonic acid), which was found to be a constituent of the Vi-antigen [113]. Compounds of this type appear to be widespread amongst bacterial cell wall constituents.

3.4 Limitations of the Heyns Rearrangement

The Heyns rearrangement suffers from the same shortcomings as the Amadori reaction (Sect. 2.6). One of the main problems is the competition between the rearrangement reaction and the hydrolysis of the initially formed ketosylamine, the latter leading back to the starting material.

Depending on the reaction conditions, each step of the Heyns rearrangement was found to be reversible [104], so that in most cases a mixture of ketosyl-
amines, the desired product and a wide range of side products is obtained. The separation of these constitutional isomers usually proves difficult.

Much attention has been devoted to the structural analysis of these side products. An example of the complexity of the mixture of possible products is the reaction of 2-amino-2-deoxy-d-glucose hydrochloride with ammonia, as conducted by Taha [114] (Scheme 32). He found five main products, which were the unreacted starting material, the cyclization products, 2-methyl-6-d-arabinosylpyrazine (104), 2-methyl-5-d-arabinosyl-3-d-erythrosylpyrazine (105), 2,5-bis-(d-arabinosyl)pyrazine (106), and a dark-brown amorphous substance which consisted of products of further decomposition. From this it can be concluded that careful control of the reaction conditions is very important for the formation of the products.

Another side product which was found in the reaction mixture was the corresponding Amadori rearrangement product. Different explanations for its formation have been suggested. A Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein rearrangement of the starting ketose to the corresponding aldose, which, in turn, can undergo the Amadori rearrangement is possible, depending on the basicity of the amine employed. On the other hand, in case of D-fructose, the corresponding aldose, D-glucose, could not be detected in the reaction mixture with amino acids [101c], so that the formation of the Amadori side product did not occur via the Lobry de Bruyn – Alberda van Ekenstein isomerization in this case. Another reason (Scheme 33) could be that the 2-aminoaldoses such as 4 and 5 formed in the Heyns rearrangement bear an aldehyde group that is more reactive than the ketone moiety of the starting material. With excess of amine a reaction between these can occur to the corresponding glycosylamine 107 with concomitant isomerization to 108 and subsequent hydrolysis of the amine at position C-2 leading to the Amadori compound 2.

The stability of the Heyns rearrangement products is considered a problem as they are free amino aldoses which are known to be more or less unstable compounds. Under the conditions for the Heyns rearrangement subsequent reactions along the Maillard reaction cascade can take place leading to a series
of degradation compounds in essentially the same manner as for the Amadori rearrangement.

The problem of epimer formation depends on the reaction time and reaction conditions as well as the components employed. Heyns investigated the ratio of the two possible epimers as well as the fraction of the corresponding Amadori product in the reaction of d-fructose with glycine. In this particular case, the product of kinetic control was the d-manno-configured 2-aminosugar, but the proportion of the more stable d-gluco epimer increased upon extended reaction times. The analysis of the products from the reaction of d-fructose with alanine and valine provided a similar picture [115].

Considering these facts, the Heyns rearrangement reaction is usually more difficult to perform than the Amadori rearrangement.

3.5 Applications of the Heyns Rearrangement

Because of the low yields frequently observed in the Heyns rearrangement, only a limited number of synthetic applications can be found in the literature.

Recently, various O-glycosylated ketoses were recognized to be suitable starting materials in the Heyns rearrangement, leading to the corresponding O-glycosylated derivatives of d-glucosamine in good yields (Scheme 34). Lactulose (4-O-galactopyranosyl-d-fructose, 51) led via the Heyns rearrangement to N-acetyl-d-lactosamine (102), a constituent of a range of natural products, for example, the Lewis\(^x\) epitope [116]. Such disaccharides have been available either by multistep chemical syntheses [117] with the inherent need for protecting group manipulations or by enzymatic methods [118]. In this particular example, the Heyns rearrangement proceeded – presumably because of destabilizing interactions of the glycosyl moiety at O-4 with the other polar groups – considerably more efficiently than with unsubstituted d-fructose allowing for yields of 60 to 70% of the Heyns rearrangement product.

Lactulose (51) was reacted with commercial grade benzylamine to give a crystalline mixture of the ketosylamine and unreacted starting material. This
A mixture underwent rearrangement in methanolic solution containing 10% glacial acetic acid as the catalyst to furnish crystalline \( N \)-benzylactosamine (109) together with small amounts of side products. The corresponding amine 110 was obtained as the acetate by catalytic hydrogenolysis of the \( N \)-benzyl group.

Subsequent acylation of the free amino group gave \( N \)-acetyllactosamine (102) and other conveniently protected derivatives such as the \( N \)-tetrachlorophthaloyl- (\( N \)-TCP) or \( N \)-(2,2,2-trichloroethyl)oxycarbonyl (\( N \)-Troc, former \( N \)-Teoc) derivatives 111 and 113 as the per-\( O \)-acetates or, in case of the \( N \)-(2,2,2-trichloroethyl)oxycarbonyl compound, the free sugar 112 is also accessible (Scheme 35).
The sequence can be performed in a three-step/one-pot procedure furnishing overall yields of 102 ranging between 40 and 45% and does not require any protecting group manipulations. Other O-glycosylated ketoses (Scheme 36), such as maltulose (114) and isomaltulose (116), reacted accordingly [119] to give the corresponding glycosylated glucosamine derivatives 115 and 117, respectively.

In the more general context of hydroxy ketone isomerization with concomitant introduction of an amine group, the Heyns rearrangement was exploited in the area of steroid synthesis. Vicinal hydroxy ketone moieties present in such structures can react with the ε-amino group of lysine residues in vitro and in vivo in a Heyns rearrangement type of reaction to form covalent addition products [120]. One example is the synthesis of \( \text{N}\varepsilon-(3\text{-hydroxy-16-oxoestra-1,3,5(10)-trien-17β-yl})-\text{l-lysine} \) (120), representing a general case of this reaction from α-hydroxy ketone 118 via the corresponding Schiff base adduct 119 (Scheme 37). The product was planned to serve studies on the relationship between estrogen and breast cancer [121].

The effect of cationic metal ions on the stable adduct formation of 16α-hydroxyesterone (118) with primary amines via the Heyns rearrangement has been investigated. Around 30 different metal chlorides were probed, and it was found that \( \text{Pt}^{4+}, \text{Cu}^{2+}, \text{Ni}^{2+}, \text{Co}^{2+} \) and \( \text{Mn}^{2+} \) suppressed the formation of the Heyns product significantly, whereas \( \text{Fe}^{2+}, \text{Y}^{3+}, \text{Gd}^{3+} \) and \( \text{Er}^{3+} \) caused a slight increase as compared with reactions in the absence of these cations. These results suggest that the formation of Heyns rearrangement products in vivo can be reduced by several metal ions, which were implied to be useful tools to clarify the significance of the stable adduct of 118 with proteins [122].
Similar intramolecular Heyns-type reactions applied to hydroxy ketones 121 and 123 were employed by Guzi and Mcdonald [123] to synthesize piperidin-3-ones 122 and 124, respectively (Scheme 38).

An alternative preparative access to selected Heyns rearrangement products was recently reported by reaction of various hexosamine hydrochlorides, for example, glucosamine hydrochloride (4), which were reacted (Scheme 39)
with glyoxylic acid (125) in formic acid to yield the corresponding rearrangement product, such as 126, featuring an N-glycinyl residue at C-2 of the sugar [124].

4 Summary and Conclusions

General aspects concerning the behavior of sugars in both the Amadori and Heyns rearrangement reactions are as follows. Aldoses give defined glycosylamines with aromatic amines that very easily undergo the Amadori rearrangement reaction. Aliphatic glycosylamines are very sensitive to hydrolysis and give the rearrangement products only under special conditions, for example in methanolic solution with oxalic acid as the catalyst. With N-unsubstituted glycosylamines, the rearrangement has not been observed.

Concerning their reaction behavior with amines, ketoses react in the opposite manner. The reaction between aromatic amines and ketoses gives the ketosylamine in low yields and the rearrangement products in poor yields. N-Alkylketosylamines, on the other hand, undergo the rearrangement to the corresponding 2-deoxy-2-aminoaldoses very easily. Ammonia yields 2-aminoaldoses. Formation of epimers at C-2 may pose a problem in terms of purification and, consequently, yields.

Despite their potential for very useful synthetic applications, both reactions appear to be highly underrated by synthetic organic chemists. A large variety of products are available by choosing suitable carbohydrates and amino compounds. Protecting group manipulations are not required offering the additional benefit of straightforward synthetic use. Exploiting additional driving forces, such as release of ring strain (by conversion of furanoid starting materials into pyranoid products) and/or destabilizing steric as well as electronic effects of crowding substituents in the starting material, novel and preparatively useful variations of the theme are clearly feasible.

Recently, both rearrangements have also been reported not to be limited to sugars, but could generally be applied to other suitable α-hydroxy aldehydes and ketones.

Acknowledgements. T. M. W. thanks the Austrian Fonds zur Förderung der wissenschaftlichen Forschung (FWF), Vienna, for a Hertha-Firnberg-Fellowship (T-18 CHE).

5 References

8. (a) Claus WH, Ree A (1898) C B 2:695; (b) Claus WH, Ree A (1898) Chem Zeitg 22:545
13. Sachsse R (1871) Ber 4:834
14. (a) Sorokin B (1886) Ber 19:513; (b) (1887) ibid 20:783
16. Fischer E (1884) Ber 17:579
17. Fischer E (1886) Ber 19:1920
20. Weygand F (1940) Ber 73:1259
27. Palm D, Simon H (1965) Z Naturforschung 20 b:32
40. (a) Gottschalk A, Lind PE (1949) Nature 164:232; (b) Gottschalk A (1951) ibid 167:845
42. Weygand F, Simon H, Keil KD, Millauer H (1964) Chem Ber 97:1002
47. Stevens VJ, Rouzer CA, Monnier VM, Cerami A (1978) Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 75:2918
64. Funcke W (1978) Liebigs Ann Chem 2099 and references cited therein
69. (a) Montgomery EM, Hudson CS (1930) J Am Chem Soc 52:2101; (b) Bots JPL (1957) Recueil Trav Chim Pays-Bas 76:515
89. Iwamoto T, Kan T, Katsumura S, Ohfune Y (1996) Synlett 169
92. de Bruyn CAL (1898) Ber 31:2476
93. Breuer R (1898) Ber 31:2193
94. Kuhn R, Birkofer L (1938) Ber 71:621
96. Heyns K, Koch W (1952) Z Naturforschung 7b:486
98. (a) Erickson JG (1953) J Am Chem Soc 75:2784; (b) (1955) ibid 77:2839
99. (a) Carson JF (1955) J Am Chem Soc 77:1881; (b) (1955) ibid 77:5957; (c) (1956) ibid 78:3728
109. Fischer E, Leuchs H (1903) Ber 36:24
Glycals (or usually their O-substituted derivatives) are readily converted into 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl compounds with O-, C-, N-, S- or otherwise linked substituents at the anomeric position. These products have been found to be useful for a range of synthetic purposes. In particular, the C-glycosidic compounds have served as readily available starting materials for the preparation of useful non-carbohydrate compounds. While these allylic rearrangement processes are usually conducted under the influence of Lewis acid catalysts, adaptations that involve activation of the allylic substituents of the starting glycals as leaving groups under neutral conditions have been developed. General features of the reactions are described as well as applications in synthesis and extensions of the basic processes.

**Keywords:** Carbohydrates, Glycals, O-Glycosides, C-Glycosides, N-Glycosides, S-Glycosides, Nucleosides, Allylic rearrangements

---

**1 Introduction**

Tri-O-acetal-\(\alpha\)-glucal (1) is the best known and most useful member of the family of cyclic 1,2-unsaturated aldose derivatives called “glycals”. These compounds are of major significance in synthesis – to a large extent because of the wide range of biologically important compounds that can be obtained from them by addition
processes [1]. Of special significance are the additions that lead to glycosides of different kinds – notably 2-amino-2-deoxy- and 2-deoxy-glycosides. On the other hand, the allylic ester feature within the structure of compound 1 makes it susceptible to displacement processes that can also be used to yield modified products – again, notably, a wide range of glycosidically bonded compounds.

The subject of the present review is the displacement reaction of glycal derivatives like 1 that gives rise to 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl products, e.g. 2 (X = OR, SR, NR\(^1\)R\(^2\), CR\(^1\)R\(^2\)R\(^3\), Scheme 1). This reaction can also be used for synthetic purposes, the O- and C-glycosides being of particular significance. The general features of the reactions exemplified by 1 → 2 will be discussed as well as specific examples, uses and modifications. A more extensive survey of this topic has been prepared [2].

First evidence of the allylic rearrangement reaction was provided by Emil Fischer in the landmark 1914 paper which described the preparation of compound 1 by the reaction of tetra-O-acetyl-\(\alpha\)-d-glucopyranosyl bromide with zinc and acetic acid [3]. Heating with water caused it to dissolve and apparently to lose one of the acetyl groups by hydrolysis, the main product later being shown to be the allylically rearranged hemiacetal 2 (X = OH) [4]. The possible presence of compound 2 (X = OH) and its E-enal isomer (Sect. 4) in his samples of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal is deemed to be the cause of Fischer erroneously applying the “al” suffix in the name of the glycals [5].

Following the early recognition of the allylic rearrangement reaction undergone by compound 1 with hot water, the synthetic potential of this type of reaction was not recognized until the early 1960s when, within a short period of time, \(p\)-nitrophenol [6], thioacetic acid [7] and theophylline [8] were all shown to take part to give the O-, S- and N-linked unsaturated glycosyl compounds 2 (X = O-C\(_6\)H\(_4\)-NO\(_2\)-(\(p\)), SAc and theophyllyl, respectively). Since then the general reaction has been developed appreciably as a procedure for making synthetically useful derivatives of 2,3-unsaturated sugars, the relevant C-linked compounds being particularly useful in the synthesis of non-carbohydrate natural products. General features of the reactions, ways of promoting them and more recent applications will now be described.

2 General Features

Enol ethers with potential leaving groups at the allylic position (e.g. compounds of general structure 3) can be subject to acid-catalyzed additions or nucleophilic displacements, protonic acids commonly giving products (5) of the former reactions while Lewis acids favour the formation of unsaturated products (7, 8)
of the latter. Ionic intermediates 4 and 6 are involved in the respective processes, as indicated in Scheme 2.

Furthermore, however, some reactions which yield unsaturated compounds proceed by addition/elimination processes – for example, palladium-promoted reactions (see later in this section). With glycal derivatives the great majority of substitution reactions give allylically rearranged products of type 7, but some afford isomers of type 8 seemingly formed by direct substitution. In some cases, as for example with azides, ambident nucleophiles attack at one centre under kinetic control to give products that may isomerize either by reversal processes or by sigmatropic rearrangement to products with the alternative allylic structures. Almost always, reactions with O- and C-nucleophiles result in 2,3-unsaturated O- and C-glycosides of type 7 (Schemes 4 and 5, respectively), but 3-N- and 3-S-substituted glycals (type 8) are encountered when N- and S-nucleophilic compounds are involved (Sect. 6).

For the preparation of unsaturated substitution products, most commonly O-acylated glycals (some of which are commercially available) are used as starting materials. With these, the allylic acyloxy groups have sufficiently good leaving properties to allow reactions with nucleophiles such as alcohols or phenols to occur without the need for added catalyst – provided elevated temperatures are used. Thus, for example, reaction of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal (1) with ethanol [9] and phenol [10] at 180 and 140 °C, respectively, gives compounds 2 (X = OEt and X = OPh) in good yield. Reaction is, as expected, facilitated by the use of glycals with allylic groups having better leaving properties than do simple carboxylates, and bis-O-(p-nitrobenzoyl)-d-xyal and 4,6-O-benzyldiene-3-O-methanesulfonyl-d-allal, treated respectively with purine or pyrimidine bases [11] and a Grignard reagent [12], lead to the corresponding N- and C-linked 2,3-unsaturated glycosidic products without the need for catalysts. These cases are however exceptional, normally acid promoters are employed and, while there are examples of the use of protonic catalysts successfully employed together with heterocyclic bases [13], these are normally avoided since, as previously noted, they preferentially favour addition processes leading to 2-deoxyglycosyl products with general structure 5.

Lewis acids are very effective catalysts for promoting reactions of the type 1 → 2 with BF₃·Et₂O being most frequently used; however, it is ineffective in cases involving the use of glycal esters with cis-related ester groups at C-3 and C-4, and SnCl₄ is commonly used instead (see below). Many others have been employed, with iodine having the advantages that it is both relatively mild and can be used with some nucleophiles that are decomposed by common Lewis acid catalysts [14]. Trimethylsilyl triflate is often used to catalyze the production of
2,3-unsaturated C-glycosides and can promote reaction, even of O-unsubstituted glycal, at very low temperatures [15].

Important developments have seen the introduction of means of activating the allylic groups of the glycal without resort to acid catalysts. Thus, C-3 hydroxyl groups can be activated by the Mitsunobu procedure to yield phenyl O-glycosides (e.g. Scheme 3) [16].

A similar approach involves the use of glycal derivatives, e.g. 9 (R = Me₂C), with pent-4-enyloxy or pent-4-enoate functions as allylic groups which are activated to leave by use of electrophilic species such as iodonium dicollidine perchlorate (Scheme 4). This approach led to the successful synthesis of the disaccharide 11 (R = Me₂C, α-anomer, 65%) when the orthodox method involving Lewis acids failed [17]. In a related manner, the 3-(phenylthio)-d-allal derivative 10, activated with the thiophilic N-iodosuccinimide, gave disaccharide 11 (R = Ac, α-anomer) in 70% yield [17].

An alternative procedure relies on DDQ to act as a Lewis acid under neutral conditions to catalyze the departure of allylic hydroxy [18] or acyloxy [19] groups, and give O-[18,19] or C-[20] 2,3-unsaturated glycosides.

Glycals with unsubstituted hydroxyl groups at the allylic centres can take part in acid-catalyzed allylic rearrangements; D-glucal (13) itself giving methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-2,3-dideoxy-α-D-erythro-hex-2-enopyranoside (12) in high yield on treatment with benzaldehyde dimethylacetal in the presence of p-toluenesulfonic acid (Scheme 5) [21]. Under these conditions, proton-catalyzed addition is therefore unfavoured relative to the rearrangement reaction. Very unexpected, but usefully, unprotected glycals give excellent yields of allyl C-glycosides almost stereospecifically when treated at very low temperatures with allylsilanes in dichloromethane/acetone with trimethylsilyl triflate as catalyst [15], d-glucal (13) now affording 99% of the allyl 2,3-unsaturated α-compound (14) under these conditions (Scheme 5).
Glycal derivatives with ether allylic groups can be induced to undergo the rearrangement reaction but yields can be poor [22]. Nevertheless, tri-\(O\)-methyl-d-glucal reacts with 2-\([(\text{trimethylsilyl})\text{thio}]\)pyridine in benzene in the presence of boron trifluoride etherate to give the relevant 2,3-unsaturated \(S\)-pyridyl thioglycosides in good yield [23], and tri-\(O\)-benzyl-d-glucal (16) in ether with the same catalyst isomerizes in unexpected fashion to afford benzyl 4,6-di-\(O\)-benzyl-2,3-dideoxy-d-erythro-hex-2-enopyranoside (15) (Scheme 6) [24]. While this reaction seems related to the isomerization undergone by tri-\(O\)-acetyl-d-glucal (Sect. 4), the means of the intramolecular migration of the C-3 acetoxy group in the latter compound is much easier to comprehend since a [3.3]-sigmatropic process is possible. Whether 15 is an intermediate in the formation in 45% yield from tri-\(O\)-benzyl-d-glucal (16) of the more unusual further isomer 17 on treatment with acetyl perchlorate (Scheme 6) is uncertain, a more probable intermediate being the derived delocalized carbenium ion [25].

An alternative means of making 2,3-unsaturated O-[26] and especially C-[27] glycosides from glycal derivatives depends on the use of palladium mediation. It is mechanistically quite different from the reactions otherwise referred to in this survey, but should be recognized as a complementary means of carrying out the glycal to 2,3-unsaturated glycoside conversion. In outline the palladium-dependent reactions involve additions to give intermediates containing the glycal, the palladium species and the nucleophile, which then often undergo elimination of a palladium-containing moiety together with the oxygen-bonded substituent at C-3, with the nucleophile bonding to C-1. In the case of the C-glycosides, various factors (some extremely subtle) operating during the formation and break down of the intermediate adducts determine whether \(\alpha\)- or \(\beta\)-glycosides result, and also whether H-3 replaces the C-3 oxygenated substituent as the eliminating partner of the palladium species. If so, the products retain their O-substituent on their double bonds. For example, when 3,4-di-\(O\)-acetylglycals with H, Me or CN groups bonded at C-5 are treated under argon with alcohols and palladium chloride, alkoxypalladation occurs and the adducts, on reduction with sodium cyanoborohydride, undergo elimination to give 2,3-\(O\)-unsaturated glycosides with \(\alpha\) configuration [26]. When, however, the glycals have oxygen-carrying carbon groups at C-5 the final products are 3,4-unsaturated glycosides with acetoxy
groups at C-2, which illustrates the propensity for the palladium-containing intermediates to undergo rearrangement processes prior to dissociations. A further restriction on this approach to O-glycosides is the need for excess of the alcohols, but means of overcoming this limitation have been demonstrated [28], and this way of making 2,3-unsaturated glycosides of simple alcohols has on occasion been preferred to the use of Lewis acid catalysts [29].

To make C-glycosides, organopalladium(II) reagents produced from the corresponding organomercurials or -stannanes are used or iodoaromatics can be employed with catalytic proportions of palladium salts. Compound 19, made by treatment of the adduct 18 with triphenylphosphine, gives 20 (R = H) in near quantitative yield on reaction with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, but when it is simply heated briefly in toluene a different elimination occurs to give the acetoxyl compound 20 (R = OAc, Scheme 7) [30].

In the furanoid glycal series the O-substitution patterns of the starting materials can determine the nature of the products obtained: when the C-3 and C-5 hydroxyl groups of compound 21 (R₁ = R₂ = H) are substituted, β-nucleoside derivatives 22 with a retained substituent at C-3 predominate; removal of the O-3 substituent of the starting material results in α-compound 23 with no substituent at C-3 (Scheme 8) [27a].
Likewise, in the production of 2,3-unsaturated aryl C-glycosides, mixed products with H or OAc at C-3 are obtained on treatment of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with aromatic hydrocarbons in acetic anhydride containing palladium acetate [31]. When benzene itself is used the latter type predominates (54%), and the former is formed in small proportions (10%), both compounds having the α configuration.

Although it has been stressed that the palladium-mediated method of making 2,3-unsaturated glycosides from glycals differs fundamentally from the Lewis acid catalyzed procedure, the results of comparative experiments involving coupling of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with pentane-2,4-dione separately with Pd(PhCN)$_2$Cl$_2$ and BF$_3$.Et$_2$O as catalysts show surprising similarity. The 3¢-linked 2,3-unsaturated C-glycosides are produced in 83 and 73% yield, respectively, with an $\alpha$/β ratio of 5:1 in both cases. With tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal the figures are 59 and 72%, with the $\alpha$-anomer being formed exclusively [28].

3 Stereochemical Features

Stereochemical factors pertaining to the starting glycal derivatives and to the products are of appreciable relevance in the acid-catalyzed allylic rearrangement reaction. Epimers of glycals at the allylic centres can react similarly or very differently. Thus the d-allal derivative 10, activated under neutral conditions (see above), gives the same 2,3-unsaturated glycoside products as does the d-glucal C-3 epimer, but with a quasi-axial leaving group, the rate of reaction of the former is enhanced [32] in accordance with the influence of Curran’s “vinyllogous anomeric effect” [33]. In contrast, however, in some circumstances, several d-allal derivatives react to give non-specific products in the presence of Lewis acids, conceivably because trans-diaxial elimination at C-3–C-4 to give unstable pyrans is possible for these compounds, whereas the d-glucal epimers are not vulnerable in this way [34].

A further stereochemical factor that can be of major significance in determining the effectiveness of the allylic rearrangement reaction is the relative orientation of ester groups at C-3 and C-4 of acylated glycals. For example, tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal (24), the C-4 epimer of compound 1, does not react satisfactorily with alcohols in the presence of boron trifluoride as catalyst, whereas the latter glycal ester gives 2,3-unsaturated O-glycosides very efficiently apparently as a consequence of the cleavage of the C-3–O bond being assisted by the trans-related ester group [35]. Similarly, while tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal reacts with hot acetic acid to give the expected tri-O-acetyl-2,3-dideoxy-d-erythro-hex-2-enoses (and some tri-O-acetyl-d-allal, Sect. 4), tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal undergoes addition and elimination reactions as well as these isomerizations under these conditions [36].

Tin tetrachloride appears to be more effective than boron trifluoride in coordinating with the allylic ester groups to enhance their leaving properties. It catalyzes the rearrangement reaction of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with alcohols more efficiently [37], and it allows the analogous reaction of tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal such that the α-d-threo-2,3-unsaturated glycosides are obtainable in high yield [35].
A generalization regarding the stereochemistry at the anomeric centre of the products formed during the allylic rearrangements of glycals is that stereoselectivity is usually pronounced, and occasionally almost complete. Thus, for example, normal Lewis acid catalyzed reactions of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with alcohols lead to the 2,3-unsaturated O-glycosidic products with $\alpha/\beta$ ratios in the range $7 \pm 2:1$ which, since it can be accepted that the anomers are interconvertible under the conditions of their preparation, are equilibrium values. With the products derived from tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal the ratio is appreciably higher [35], which suggests that there is a stereoelectronic factor favouring the dihydro-[2H]-pyran structure with the electronegative allylic groups both quasi-axial.

Mixed anomers of 2,3-unsaturated compounds formed by use of $N$- or $S$-nucleophilic species normally also contain $\alpha$-isomers predominantly, and the same can be said of the products derived by use of $C$-nucleophiles. This last group has however to be considered specially because, having ether rather than acetal character at the anomeric centre, they are less prone to acid-catalyzed anomerization than are, for example, the O-glycosid analogues and the products are normally those of kinetically controlled processes. Reaction of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with allyltrimethylsilane in dichloromethane at $-78^\circ$C with titanium tetrachloride as catalyst gives the $C$-allyl products in 85% yield and with an $\alpha/\beta$ ratio of 16:1 (Scheme 9) [38]. Again this ratio is higher (30:1) in the case of the analogous glycosides derived from tri-O-acetyl-d-galactal. In related work, also conducted at $-78^\circ$C, high yields and ratios as high as $>99:1$ have been recorded by use, not just of O-acetylated glycals but, remarkably, of O-unprotected compounds themselves [15].

Alkenes which can undergo additions of electrophilic ions to give tertiary carboxations also react with the delocalized ions derivable from glycals and yield $\alpha$-compounds with high selectivity (e.g. Scheme 10) [39].

The 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl cyanides obtainable from glycal derivatives are of appreciable interest as synthetic intermediates and have been produced by use of trimethylsilyl cyanide in nitromethane with boron trifluoride etherate as catalyst [40]. While under these conditions the anomeric cyanides are obtained from tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal in an $\alpha/\beta$ ratio of 1.4:1, the product formed with dichloromethane as solvent contains only the $\alpha$-isomer [41]. Similar results are obtained by use of the Lewis acid diethylaluminium cyanide which, in benzene at room temperature, affords the 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl cyanides from tri-O-acetyl-d-
glucal in the ratio 3:2, this becoming 9:1 when the reaction is conducted in refluxing solvent, which corroborates earlier evidence that the $\beta$-isomer (25) can anomerize [42]. These results suggest that $\alpha$-cyanides are kinetically somewhat favoured and that they are strongly thermodynamically preferred. The same does not apply to all such C-glycosides, however: compounds 26 equilibrate under basic conditions to give mainly the $\beta$-d-erythro-C-hexosides, presumably via derived stabilized carbanions which can ring open to allow anomerization [43].

Likewise, activated aromatic compounds give mainly $\beta$-linked aryl C-glycosides from tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal (1) in the presence of Lewis acids, presumably because the bulky aryl groups can attain the favoured $\psi$-equatorial orientation by isomerization via acyclic C-1 carbenium ions which are stabilized by both the allylic and aryl $\pi$-systems [44].

4 2,3-Unsaturated O-Glycosides and Other 1-O-Linked Products

Recent studies have revealed that the seminal reaction whereby tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal is converted to the rearranged free sugar 2 (X = OH) by heating in water (Scheme 1) [3, 4] is part of a complex process with light causing the formation of the acyclic E-isomer 28 of the aldehydic isomer 27 of the first product (Scheme 11) [5]. Exclusion of light inhibits its formation, but continuation of the reaction without such exclusion results in the E-enal becoming the main reaction product with several by-products being formed [45].

Otherwise acetylated glycals treated in aqueous dioxane containing sulfuric acid and catalytic amounts of mercury(II) sulfate are efficiently converted directly to E-enals (e.g. 28) [46] by reactions that probably involve addition/elimination processes rather than allylic rearrangements.

Both in dioxane containing sulfuric acid [47] or in water with molybdenum trioxide [48] hydrogen peroxide reacts with tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal to give 50–70% yields of the crystalline hydroperoxide 29. On the other hand, $m$-chloroperbenzoic acid in dichloromethane containing boron trifluoride gives peroxide 30, which spontaneously loses the benzoic acid to afford the unsaturated lactone 31 [49].
Simple thermal rearrangement of tri-O-acetyl-D-glucal, or treatment in benzene containing boron trifluoride [50], or heating in acetic anhydride containing nickel(II) chloride [51], all result at equilibrium not just in the expected 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl acetates 32 (65%) but in some of the starting material (15%) and its C-3 epimer tri-O-acetyl-D-allal 33 (20%) (Scheme 12).

While the thermal rearrangement probably proceeds by a sigmatropic process as illustrated, followed by anomerization of the derived 2,3-unsaturated β-acetate to the α-compound, and in turn its sigmatropic rearrangement, the other reactions may involve the stabilized carbocation derived from the starting material by catalyzed loss of the allylic acetoxy group (cf. Scheme 2). A further means of making 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl esters involves the use of the Mitsunobu reaction, as illustrated in Scheme 13, but when the C-3 epimer of the starting material is used the reaction is not specific yielding some of the 3-O-benzoylglucal compound derived by direct displacement of the hydroxyl group [52].

To a large extent the rearrangement reaction of glycals has been used to give access to a wide range of O-glycosides with boron trifluoride being the favoured catalyst, but it is ineffective when tri-O-acetyl-D-galactal is involved and tin(IV) chloride is used instead (Sect. 3). Yields are frequently >80% for reactions with simple primary alcohols and rather less for secondary and tertiary compounds, t-butyl glycosides were produced from tri-O-acetyl-D-glucal and di-O-acetyl-L-rhamnal in 73 and 50% yield, respectively (catalysts: I$_2$ [14] and SnCl$_4$ [22]).

Phenols can take part in the rearrangement process without the need for catalysts but elevated temperatures are required, phenol reacting with tri-O-acetyl-D-glucal in 3 h at 140 °C to give 80% yield of the α- and β-glycosides in the ratio 6:1 [10]. Pure α-anomers can be isolated directly in about 40% yield after reaction of this glycal ester and di-O-acetyl-L-rhamnal with various substituted phenols [53]. Again, Lewis acids promote the reaction, and again tin(IV) chloride is required for the efficient reaction of tri-O-acetyl-D-galactal. A special feature
of the acid-catalyzed reactions that involve the use of phenols containing activating substituents is the further rearrangement to C-glycosidic isomers that the initial products may undergo. Thus, for example, treatment of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal with p-methoxyphenol in toluene with small amounts of boron trifluoride etherate results in 92% of the expected O-linked kinetic products 34 (Scheme 14) which, however, can be converted to the thermodynamically favoured 35 (72%). Otherwise, the latter can be derived directly from the starting materials by use of dichloromethane as solvent and higher proportions of the Lewis acid catalyst [54].

Aryl 2,3-unsaturated O-glycosides also result from the reaction of unsubstituted glycals with phenols in the presence of diethyl azodicarboxylate and triphenylphosphine, some reactions affording the products in high yields and with stereospecific introduction of the aglycone. In this way, the p-methoxyphenyl 2,3-unsaturated α-glycoside is obtained in 80% yield from l-rhamnal using dichloromethane as solvent [55].

Coupling of glycals with carbohydrate alcohols has obvious potential for the synthesis of di- and higher saccharides, and compounds 36 (R¹ = AcO; R² = H) [35] and 37 (R¹ = H; R² = AcO) [56] exemplify the types of products that can be made, the yields each being 56% with tin(IV) chloride being used in the former case since triacetetyl-d-galactal was involved. These Lewis acid catalyzed couplings can be conducted with glycosyl acceptors containing the following groups: acyl and sulfonyl esters; alkyl, benzyl and silyl ethers; glycosidic, acetal, epoxide, halide. Occasionally, monosaccharide derivatives do not take part satisfactorily in the normal type of coupling reactions, for example, 1,2:5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-d-glucose (perhaps because the alcohol group is sterically hindered) or 1,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-d-fructose (because of its acid sensitivity). In these cases glycals bearing the pent-4-enoyl group at C-3 have been used successfully to produce the respective disaccharide derivatives (Scheme 4; R = Ac) [17]. Otherwise iodine can be used to provide mild coupling conditions [14].

Applications of the rearrangement reaction with dihydroxy acceptors are so far rare, but diols 38 [57], 39 [58] and 40 (chloramphenicol) [14] are examples of compounds that have been successfully diglycosylated, and compound 41,
produced by two sequential applications of the reaction, has been converted into saturated compounds of relevance in aminoglycoside antibiotic chemistry [59].

Other glycosides of significance in medicinal chemistry to have been obtained by application of the allylic rearrangement reaction to alcohols are 42 (R\textsuperscript{1} = OAc, R\textsuperscript{2} = H) [60] and 43 (R\textsuperscript{1} = H, R\textsuperscript{2} = OAc) [61]. In the former case reaction occurs selectively at the secondary alcohol site, and in the latter the glycosylation has been used to resolve racemic 3-hydroxy-2-azetidinones, the illustrated enantiomer being required for synthesis studies on taxol.

5

2,3-Unsaturated C-Glycosides

For the “normal” allylic rearrangement applied in the synthesis of C-glycosides, reagents are required that afford C-nucleophilic species under the (usually acidic) reaction conditions, and the following types of compounds have proved suitable: organometallics, cyanides, C-silylated compounds, alkenes (especially those that react with electrophiles to give stable carbocationic intermediates; enol ethers and esters being notable examples), activated aromatic and β-dicarbonyl compounds. Reagents used in palladium-mediated reactions are special cases (Sect. 2). With few exceptions all these C-nucleophile sources react with
glycals at the anomeric centre, but very occasional instances of the formation of C-3 branched-chain glycals have been reported.

By use of trialkylaluminums a range of alkyl and alkenyl groups can be introduced at C-1; compound 44 can be obtained in 72% yield by treatment of di-O-acetyl-6-deoxy-d-galactal in dichloromethane at –78°C with trimethylaluminum in the presence of titanium tetrachloride (Scheme 15) [62], and the doubly C-1-substituted 45, required for natural product synthesis, is produced stereospecifically from tri-O-acetyl-1-C-allyl-d-glucal by a similar methylation procedure [63].

To introduce the cyano group at C-1, diethylaluminum cyanide can be used in benzene solution without a catalyst and gives anomeric mixtures of the α,β anomers, the ratios of which depend on the temperature used [42] (Sect. 3). Otherwise trimethylsilyl cyanide together with boron trifluoride etherate can be employed to introduce the cyano group [40, 41]. Organozinc derivatives of the Reformatski type, e.g. (cyanoethyl)zinc iodide, can be used with Lewis acid catalysis [64]; exceptionally, however, zinc/copper analogues favour the formation of C-3-substituted glycals [65].

Methylenecyclohexane is an example of an alkene that adds an electrophile to give a stable cationic intermediate, and with tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal and tin(IV) bromide as catalyst it gives the diene indicated in Scheme 10 stereospecifically in 94% yield. On the other hand, reaction of methylenecyclobutane (EtAlCl₂ as catalyst) results in the chlorinated adduct 46, since the ionic reaction intermediate favours addition rather than elimination [39].

An alternative way of generating C-nucleophilic species depends on the use of allylsilanes together with Lewis acids; allyltrimethylsilane having been frequently employed. Consequently, compound 47 has been described on several occasions [38, 66] and this compound can also be derived by the use of DDQ as promoter [20]. Most strikingly, allyl 2,3-unsaturated C-glycosides can be obtained from the O-unprotected glycals using trimethylsilyl triflate in dichloromethane/acetonitrile at low temperatures; the reactions are both highly efficient and highly stereoselective, with α/β ratios of >99:1 being recorded for the most common glycals [15]. Scheme 16 illustrates the ingenious use of a substituted allylsilane in the production of a C-linked disaccharide derivative [67].
Further examples of reagents that react with electrophilic species to form C–C bonds are alkynylsilanes: with the assistance of Lewis acid catalysts a set of compounds 48 (e.g. \( R = \text{SiMe}_3, C = \text{CSiMe}_3, CH = \text{CHCl}, CH = \text{CH-C = CSiMe}_3 \)) have been made [68], and the parent compound 48 (\( R = \text{H} \)) is available from the trimethylsilyl analogue [69].

As is to be expected from the above, vinyl ethers or esters react with glycals in standard rearrangement processes to yield 2,3-unsaturated \( \text{C-glycosides} \), tri-\( O \)-acetyl-\( \text{d-glucal} \) with enol acetates [70] or enol silyl ethers [71] of acetaldehyde, acetone and acetophenone giving access to the carbonyl compounds 49 (\( R = \text{H, Me, Ph} \)), respectively.

It follows that glycals themselves, being vinyl ethers, could react in intermolecular fashion in the presence of Lewis acids, and in a control experiment conducted in early work on the reaction of tri-\( O \)-acetyl-\( \text{d-glucal} \) with alcohols it was found that dimerization does occur, as indicated in Scheme 17 [50].

Initially, the product 50 was isolated in 10% yield, but acetyl perchlorate in dichloromethane at \(-78^\circ\text{C}\) has given a yield of 61% (\( \alpha/\beta \) ratio 1.5:1, at the C-1-OAc centre) from tri-\( O \)-acetyl-\( \text{d-glucal} \); 77% of the pure \( \alpha,\alpha \)-analogue is obtainable from tri-\( O \)-acetyl-\( \text{d-galactal} [25 \text{a}] \). Not surprisingly, dimers of this kind have been encountered following several reactions of glycal esters under acidic conditions [2].
As already indicated in Sect. 4, heating acetylated glycals with activated phenols can result in the isolation of 2,3-unsaturated C-aryl glycosides [54], formed via O-glycosides (Scheme 14), with the yields correlating with the acidity of the phenols used [72]. Otherwise, reaction of acetylated glycals with bromomagnesium phenates at room temperature under ultrasonication gives 2,3-unsaturated C-aryl glycosides in ca. 70% yield with α/β ratios >20:1 for tri-O-acetyl-β-glucal-derived products [73].

For the synthesis of 2,3-unsaturated C-glycosides with carbonyl groups at C-3 of the C-1 substituents the use of allyl silyl ethers together with a Lewis acid catalyst is recommended [74].

6 Other 2,3-Unsaturated Compounds

The allylic rearrangement of glycals also offers a means of introducing S-, N-, and P-linked groups and hydride (and to a limited extent halide ions) into glycals at C-1 at the expense of the allylic substituents. With alcohols and phenols taking part in the reaction to give 2,3-unsaturated products exclusively, it might be expected that thiols would react similarly, and tri-O-acetyl-β-glucal and -galactal with simple thiols, under mild conditions, have given largely the expected glycosides, but with smaller proportions of 3-thioglycal isomers. This, however, represents the kinetic situation and, when equilibrium is reached, the 3-thioglycals are favoured by more than 10:1, establishing that the alcohol and thiol reactions are dissimilar – a difference that has been attributed to the relative hard/soft natures of these nucleophiles and the C-1, C-3 centres of glycals [75]. Notwithstanding the above the most readily isolated products from tri-O-acetyl-β-glucal and -galactal treated with thiophenol and appropriate Lewis acids are the phenylthio 2,3-unsaturated-α-glycosides [76], and thioglycosides are the sole products when (trimethylsilyl)thiols are used as nucleophiles [23]. Reaction of tri-O-acetyl-β-glucal with benzenesulfinic acid at –78°C in the presence of boron trifluoride provides a novel way of producing the 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl sulfones [77]. In this reaction the carbohydrate is pretreated with the catalyst prior to the addition of the sulfinic acid, to generate the intermediate carbocation; this important experimental detail could possibly ensure success in applications other than this particular rearrangement reaction.

Heating of various glycal derivatives with the soft nucleophile sodium azide in the presence of boron trifluoride initially gives the 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl azides – but accompanied by larger proportions of 3-azido-3-deoxyglycal isomers. Apparently, like the thio compounds, the former are kinetically favoured and they rearrange to the latter, but it is not known whether reionization or [3,3]-sigmatropic thermal rearrangement is involved. The equilibrium products derived from tri-O-acetyl-β-glucal are shown in Scheme 18, the clearly dominant one being the 3-azidoallal isomer [78].

With N-nucleophilic species the purine and pyrimidine bases have received the most attention because of their potential to yield nucleoside analogues of interest in medicinal chemistry. In Scheme 19 the consequences of heating tri-
O-acetyl-d-glucal with 2,6-dichloropurine in boiling nitromethane containing catalytic proportions of p-toluenesulfonic acid are illustrated. Again, the kinetic products are the 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl compounds, which convert to the more stable 3-substituted glycal isomers [79], the latter step apparently requiring acid [80], which indicates that the equilibration involves the regeneration of a stabilized carbocation.

To inhibit the formation of the 3-substituted glycals, starting materials with allylic groups with enhanced leaving properties are recommended [81] or, otherwise, N-trimethylsilylated bases can be used with catalysts such as trityl on lithium perchlorate [82].

Pyrimidine bases can be less reactive than purines in these processes, but the tri-O-acetyl-D-galactal-derived compounds 51 have been obtained (α, 40%; β, 24%) by use of bis-O-(trimethylsilyl)uracil in ethyl acetate with antimony pentachloride as catalyst, the β-anomer being required for the synthesis of an antibiotic [83]. Although trace proportions of 3-substituted glycals are present in the products of this reaction, their formation from the initial 2,3-unsaturated compounds is apparently less easy than is the case with the purine analogues.

While 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl chlorides and bromides are effectively unknown (but such chlorides with acyloxy groups at C-2 have been reported [84]), analogous fluorides, e.g. compound 52, have been made as reactive syrups by use of hydrogen fluoride in benzene [85] or pyridinium poly(hydrogen fluoride) [86]. Analogous phosphonates, such as compound 53 [87], can be obtained by use of dialkyl [87] or trialkyl [88] phosphites. Mixed anomers, with the β-compounds predominating, are formed, and the compounds are characterized by undergoing prototropic shifts under basic conditions to give 3-deoxyglycal 1-phosphonates with the π bonds now in conjugation.
On treatment of $O$-acetylated glycals with triethylsilane and boron trifluoride in inert solvents, hydride enters at C-1 to displace the allylic groups and give 2,3-unsaturated 1,5-anhydroalditols (Scheme 20) [89].

### 7 Extensions of the Reaction

While the great majority of the substitution reactions of glycals and their derivatives which occur with allylic rearrangement have involved simple pyranoid compounds in intermolecular processes, there are some variations that usefully extend the scope of the reaction. A well-known set of glycal derivatives that carry acyloxy groups at C-2 are readily produced by removal of hydrogen halide from acylated glycosyl halides, and they undergo most of the allylic rearrangement reactions already described for the glycals. There are, however, characteristics that are peculiar to these 2-substituted compounds. Thus, treatment of the best-known member of the set, compound 54, in inert solvents with boron trifluoride causes both intramolecular allylic rearrangement and anomeration, and compound 55 ($R = Ac, X = H, \alpha$-anomer) is obtained as the main product (60%) [90]. However, if the reaction time is extended, loss of acetic anhydride occurs with further allylic rearrangement, and the enone 56 and its $\beta$-anomer are thereby available in 70% yield ($\alpha/\beta$ ratio 3:1). Likewise, the same products are obtained in 83% yield ($\alpha/\beta$ 6:1) from the 4-epimer of 54 [91]. On the other hand, simple thermal rearrangement of compound 54 gives the acetate 55 ($R = Ac, X = H, \beta$-anomer) specifically (75% isolated) [90]. The C-4 epimer of 54, derived from tetra-$O$-acetyl-$\alpha$-D-galactopyranosyl bromide, does not react under these thermal conditions, which indicates that the reactivity of compound 54 is dependent on the ester group at C-4 assisting the departure of the allylic group (cf. the analogous behaviour of epimers 1 and 24, Sect. 3).
Compounds such as 54 take part in coupling reactions with alcohols in the presence of Lewis acids to give 2,3-unsaturated glycosides; disaccharide 57, for example, can be obtained in 59% yield (α/β ratio 4:1) [92]. β-Glycosides of the series can be made by uncatalyzed displacements at C-1 applied to the α-trichloroacetate 55 (R = Bz, X = Cl) made from the benzoyl analogue of tetraacetate 54 [93]. Like the glycal esters, their 2-acyloxy analogues also react with heterocyclic bases [94] and with a range of C-nucleophilic species to give access to products such as 58 [70], and analogous glycosyl chlorides and fluorides are known [84, 95].

An unusual reaction appears to take place when the 2-C-formyl glycal 59 reacts in the presence of boron trifluoride with p-cresol to give the C-3-substituted 60 apparently by direct displacement [96]. More probably, however, the reaction proceeds in the normal way to give the 2,3-unsaturated α-O-glycoside which undergoes Claisen rearrangement (cf. Scheme 14).

Furanoid glycal and 2-acyloxyglycal derivatives and the products formed as a result of their substitution with allylic rearrangement are all much less robust than their pyranoid analogues because of their vulnerability to eliminations to give furans. Nevertheless, they have potential in synthesis, as illustrated by the reaction undergone by the sodio derivative 61 on treatment with 2-chloropyrimidine, the intermediate 3-O-(2-pyrimidinyl)glycal 62 rearranging spontaneously to give the N-(2,3-unsaturated glycofuranoyl)pyrimidinone 63 in 61% yield (Scheme 21) [97].

For the production of 2,3-unsaturated furanoid C-glycosides, palladium-promoted addition/elimination reactions can be used to good advantage (Scheme 8). While the majority of relevant reactions of glycals discussed so far involve intermolecular processes, intramolecular examples are well established and very useful, the simplest involving attack of the O-6 at C-1 so that when D-glucal itself is dehydrated, or when 3,4-di-O-substituted derivatives or compounds with silyl protection at O-6 are treated with Lewis acids, they give 2,3-unsaturated 1,6-anhydrides of type 64 usually in high yield [98]. A related example involves the formation of the spiro compounds 65 which are produced on activation with N-iodosuccinimide of the appropriate glycal derivative possessing a
phenylthio group at C-3 and a C₆ hydroxyl-containing C-bonded substituent at C-1 [99].

Most cases, however, of intramolecular examples of the allylic rearrangement reaction of glycals involve the participation of nucleophiles bonded to C-3 and instances have already been given in the rearrangements of C-3 esters and of an unstable pyrimidinoxy intermediate (Scheme 21). Glycals that possess 3-azido groups and 3-vinyl ethers take part in related [3.3]-sigmatropic rearrangements to give 2,3-unsaturated glycosyl azides [100] and C-formylmethyl glycosides (e.g. 66) [42], respectively, with retention of configuration. Extensions of the latter reaction have proved useful for the production of C-glycosides of relevance in natural product synthesis, the propanoate and silyl ether 67, for example, thermally giving mainly compound 68 from which the Prelog – Djerassi lactone was made [101].

On the other hand, spontaneous [2,3]-Wittig rearrangement of the anion 69 affords the epimers 70 (Scheme 22) [102], illustrating that useful 2,5-dihydrofurans with C-substituents on the carbon atoms on either side of the ring oxygen atom can be obtained by this and related approaches.

Rearrangement of compound 71 under acidic conditions illustrates the use of the reaction in the formation of spiro compounds, the product 72 being obtained in 53% yield (Scheme 23) [103].

The allylic rearrangement reaction has been extended further in applications with the allylic leaving group at a branch-point carbon atom, so that compound
73 affords the reactive exo-methylene glycoside 74 under the usual conditions and hence gives pyranobenzopyrans 75 (Scheme 24) [104].

Otherwise, the leaving group may be in the homoallylic situation either in the glycal itself or on a branch carbon atom; in both situations the double-bond electrons of the glycal bond to the homoallylic carbon atom to give products with cyclopropane rings fused to furanoid or pyranoid rings, respectively. In this way compounds 76 [105] and 77 [106] are converted to cyclopropa-furanoid and -pyranoid nucleosides (Schemes 25 and 26, respectively).
8 References

3. Fischer E (1914) Chem Ber 47:196
37. Ferrier RJ, Ilanko G unpublished results
hedron Lett 29:5549
45. (a) Tam SY-K, Fraser-Reid B (1975) Carbohydr Res 45:29; (b) Madaj J, Rak J, Sokolowski
2617
2 468
64. (a) Dorgan BJ, Jackson RFW (1996) Synlett: 859; (b) Orsini F, Pelizzoni F (1993) Carbo-
hydr Res 243:183; (c) Thorn SN, Gallagher T (1996) Synlett 185
65. Thorn SN, Gallagher T (1996) Synlett 856
Carbohydr Res 191:243
1979; (b) de Raadt A, Ferrier R (1991) Carbohydr Res 216:93
90. Ferrier RJ, Prasad N, Sankey GH (1968) J Chem Soc (C) 974
94. (a) Onodera K, Yajima T (1970) Carbohydr Res 13:97; (b) Ferrier RJ, Ponpipom MM
(1971) J Chem Soc (C) 560
98. (a) Mereyala HB, Venkataramanaiah KC, Dalvoy VS (1992) Carbohydr Res 225:151; (b)
Lauer G, Oberdorfer F (1993) Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 32:272; (c) Sharma GVM, Ram-
Synthetically Useful Base-Induced Rearrangements of Aldonolactones

Inge Lundt, Robert Madsen

Department of Organic Chemistry, Technical University of Denmark, Building 201, 2800 Lyngby, Denmark
E-mail: okil@pop.dtu.dk

Aldonolactones can be activated at the α and ω positions by selective bromination or tosylation. The activated aldonolactones can be transformed into epoxyaldonolactones by treatment with base under non-aqueous conditions. Treatment of epoxy- or bromodeoxyaldonolactones with aqueous base gives epoxymaldoates in which the epoxide can undergo Payne rearrangement to more stable epoxyaldonates. These can subsequently be opened by the carboxylate group with inversion of the configuration at the attacked carbon. Using this method a number of less available aldonolactones/acids have been prepared, in a reaction sequence where the configuration at one, two or three carbon centers has been stereospecifically interconverted. An attractive synthesis of L-gluconic acid from D-gluconolactone is presented.

Keywords: Aldonolactones, Epoxides, Rearrangements

1 Introduction ................................................................. 178
1.1 Aldonolactones: Preparation and Chemical Reactivity .......... 178
1.2 Isomerisation at C-2 .................................................... 178

2 Epoxides of Aldonolactones ............................................. 179
2.1 Preparation ............................................................... 179
2.2 Reactions in Aqueous Base ........................................... 180

3 Base-Induced Rearrangements of ω-Activated Aldonolactones via Primary Epoxides Formed In Situ ...................... 181
3.1 Stereoselective Inversion at C-4 in Pentonolactones ............. 181
3.2 Stereoselective Inversion of Configuration at More Than One Carbon Atom in Aldonolactones by Payne Rearrangements ...... 183
3.3 Formation of Five-Membered Cyclic Ethers (Oxolanes) in Competition with Rearrangements of Epoxides .................. 185
3.4 Base-Induced Rearrangement of α,β-Epoxyaldonolactones. Synthesis of L-Gluconic Acid From D-Gluconolactone .......... 187

4 Conclusions ................................................................. 190

5 References ................................................................. 190
1
Introduction

1.1
Aldonolactones: Preparation and Chemical Reactivity

In the past 20 years aldonolactones have found widespread application as cheap, chiral synthons for the synthesis of many biologically important compounds and natural products [1]. The area of aza- and carbasugar synthesis, in particular, has seen aldonolactones emerge as versatile starting materials [1, 2]. Aldonolactones constitute a more diverse chiral pool of compounds than aldoses. From each aldose several aldonolactones/aldonic acids are available in just one step, i.e. by anomic oxidation of the aldose [3], by one-carbon Kiliani chain elongation [4] or by one-carbon oxidative degradation [5]. In addition, a number of aldonolactones are available via some more special reactions including reduction, or oxidative cleavage of the double bond in vitamin C [6, 7]. As a result, the aldonolactones are in many cases more easily available than the corresponding aldoses, especially in the L-series.

The chemical reactivity of aldonolactones also differs remarkably from the reactivity of aldoses. For synthetic manipulation of aldoses several steps are usually required to protect and define the stereochemistry at the C-1 hemiacetal function, e.g. via a glycoside. The lactone group in aldonolactones can be, however, maintained through a number of transformations [1, 2]. The reactivity of the hydroxy groups in aldonolactones is also different from that normally observed in aldoses. The hydroxy group α-positioned to the lactone moiety, in particular, shows similar or enhanced reactivity as compared with the primary hydroxy group. This gives rise to a number of regioselective reactions in aldonolactones and diminishes the need for many different protecting groups [1, 2]. Furthermore, it should be noted that aldonolactones usually prefer the five-membered 1,4-lactone over the six-membered pyranoid form predominant in aldoses.

1.2
Isomerisation at C-2

Due to the electronegativity of the carboxylic function, it is possible to isomerise aldonolactones at C-2 in the presence of a base. The reaction, which has been known for more than a century, can be carried out in water at 100–140 °C with calcium or barium hydroxide or with pyridine as the base [8]. With hydroxide it is possible to isomerise the aldolactone while the weaker base pyridine can isomerise the lactone form. The reaction is slow to reach equilibrium and then typically gives an epimeric ratio of 3:1 in favour of the 2,3-threo-epimer [8]. After separation of the two epimers by crystallisation, the starting material can be recycled. However, due to the harsh conditions, the isolated yields of the two epimers are often moderate to low. As a result, the base-catalysed C-2 isomerisation is most useful in cases where the starting aldonolactone is very cheap and the C-2 epimer very expensive, as is the case for the isomerisation of galactonolactone.
to talonolactone and arabinonolactone to ribonolactone [8]. The latter isomerisation is in use industrially for the manufacture of riboflavine [9]. Although useful, these isomerisation procedures have not seen much additional development for several decades and therefore the methods will not be further discussed here. This chapter will focus on base-mediated isomerisations of aldonolactones via epoxides.

2 Epoxides of Aldonolactones

2.1 Preparation

Aldonolactones can be converted into epoxylactones with base if they have been regioselectively activated by introduction of leaving groups. The regioselective functionalisation is possible at the position $\alpha$ to the lactone and at the terminal primary (\(\omega\)) position. The most efficient method for this functionalisation is treatment of the aldonolactone/aldonic acid with hydrogen bromide in acetic acid (Scheme 1). In this strongly acidic medium the lactone is partly acetylated followed by formation of acetoxonium ions. These then undergo opening with bromide ions to give acetylated bromodeoxyaldonolactones [10]. The formation of acetoxonium ions controls the regio- and stereoselectivity of introduction of the bromine: bromine will always open the acetoxonium ion at the primary position, as well as at C-2 of a 2,3-acetoxonium ion, with inversion of configuration.

Scheme 1: Epoxylactones
2,3-Acetoxonium ions are formed in aldono-1,4-lactones that have the OH-2 and OH-3 in a cis orientation.

In two cases, however, bromine is also introduced at C-2 with inversion of configuration, although the OH-2 and OH-3 are in a trans orientation. Aldonic acids do in general adopt the 1,4-lactone form in strongly acidic media, but gluconic and xylonic acid exist to a certain degree as the open-chain acid form, and thus, because the OH-2 and OH-3 groups are trans-oriented in the 1,4-lactone, are able to form acetoxonium ions between two trans hydroxy groups from the open aldonic acids. Thus, \(d\)-glucono-1,5-lactone yields 2,6-dibromo-2,6-dideoxy-\(d\)mannono-1,4-lactone, while 2,5-dibromo-2,5-dideoxy-\(d\)-lyxono-1,4-lactone is formed from \(d\)-xylonic acid by treatment with hydrogen bromide in acetic acid. In general, bromodeoxyaldonolactones adopt the 1,4-lactone form [1b].

Regioselective bromination of the primary position can also be achieved with tetrabromomethane (carbon tetrabromide) and triphenylphosphine in pyridine [11] or with thionyl bromide in dimethylformamide (DMF) [12]. Regioselective mesylation or tosylation of the primary hydroxy group, however, is less efficient due to competing sulfonylation of the \(\alpha\)-hydroxy group. Instead, \(\alpha,\omega\)-di-O-tosylated aldonolactones can in some cases be formed in good yields by using 2.0–2.3 equiv of tosyl chloride in pyridine [13]. The 2-O-tosylated aldonolactones thus formed have the same configuration as the starting lactones and thus are C-2 epimers to the bromodeoxy aldonolactones. Access to new activated lactones has thus been achieved.

Epoxylactones can be prepared from the \(\alpha,\omega\)-dibromodideoxyaldonolactones by treatment with base under non-aqueous conditions. The bromine \(\alpha\) to the lactone is more reactive than the primary one. As a result a 2,3-epoxide can be formed selectively by treatment with potassium fluoride or carbonate in acetone or acetonitrile at ambient temperature [14]. A bis-epoxide can be formed by prolonged treatment or by using the stronger base cesium fluoride [14] (Scheme 1).

### 2.2 Reactions in Aqueous Base

When epoxylactones or bromodeoxyaldonolactones are treated with excess aqueous sodium or potassium hydroxide, ring opening of the lactone will take place. In addition, the resulting epoxyaldonic acid can undergo a Payne rearrangement under these basic conditions. The Payne rearrangement is the isomerisation of a 2,3-epoxy alcohol with inversion of configuration at carbon number 2 (Scheme 2) [15]. During the isomerisation less stable epoxides will isomerise to more stable ones. In general, 1,2-disubstituted (secondary) epoxides are more stable than monosubstituted (primary) epoxides and, among the disubstituted epoxides, the trans-epoxides are more stable than the corresponding epoxides that possess cis configuration.

![Scheme 2](image-url)
However, the Payne rearrangement tends to produce mixtures of epoxides and is therefore of limited preparative value. The most important application of the Payne rearrangement occurs when one of the epoxides ring opens preferentially with a nucleophile under the reaction conditions and often intramolecular substitutions are energetically favoured compared with reactions with external nucleophiles. In the epoxyaldonic acids two different internal nucleophiles are present: the carboxylate group and the hydroxy groups. Ring opening of the epoxide with the carboxylate gives inversion of configuration at the attacked carbon, thereby producing a lactone, which opens easily in the basic medium to give an aldonic acid, isomeric to the starting aldonic acid (Scheme 3). Ring opening with a remote hydroxy group will produce an oxolane that, in this context, is considered an unwanted side reaction (Scheme 3). The ring opening of the epoxide will in both cases occur in a 5-exo mode according to Baldwin’s rules [16]. In the following sections several methods for isomerisation of aldonolactones will be presented by formation and ring opening of epoxyaldonic acids.

3 Base-Induced Rearrangements of ω-Activated Aldonolactones via Primary Epoxides Formed in Situ

3.1 Stereoselective Inversion at C-4 in Pentonolactones

Aldonolactones activated at the primary position very rapidly form a primary epoxide of the open aldonic acid when dissolved in aqueous base. Usually, 3 molar equivalents of potassium hydroxide are used to keep the pH above 14. This is a prerequisite for a Payne rearrangement and/or for opening of the epoxide by an intramolecular nucleophile. Using the weaker base potassium carbonate, no rearrangement will take place and hence the primary epoxide will be opened at the primary carbon by hydroxide. Pentonolactones activated at C-5 will isomerise stereospecifically at C-4 when treated with strong potassium hydroxide. This is due to the opening of the primary epoxide by the carboxylate
group, since this is the only possible intramolecular ring opening with a five-membered transition state with the epoxide in an exo mode.

When 5-bromo-2,5-dideoxy-\(\text{-d-threo}\)-pentonolactone (1) (Scheme 4) was treated with aqueous potassium hydroxide and subsequently acidified, 2-deoxy-\(\text{l-erythro}\)-pentono-1,4-lactone (2-deoxy-\(\text{l-ribonolactone}\)) (2) was formed and isolated as the crystalline benzoate [17]. A stereospecific inversion at C-4 had
taken place. Monitoring the reaction by $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy revealed immediate formation of the open 4,5-epoxycarboxylate. No other intermediates were observed before the appearance of the 2-deoxy-L-erythro-aldonate. The inversion at C-4 is a result of the opening of the epoxide by the carboxylate group leading to an intermediate lactone that is opened immediately by the aqueous base.

Similarly, 5-O-mesy1-2,3-O-isopropylidene-D-lyxonolactone (3) [18] was rearranged to L-ribonolactone (4) when treated with 3 molar equivalents of potassium hydroxide followed by acidification [19] (Scheme 4). The compound was isolated as the highly crystalline 3,4-O-benzylidene-L-ribono-1,5-lactone. The method was also used to prepare L-lyxonolactone from 5-O-mesy1-2,3-O-isopropylidene-D-ribonolactone (5) [19] but when during the workup the pH was adjusted to 3, the 2,3-O-isopropylidene-L-lyxonolactone was isolated in 84% yield [20] (Scheme 4). Again the reactions were monitored by $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy to observe the intermediate epoxides.

Using these simple procedures, which are easy to perform, a method for the synthesis of L-ribono- and L-lyxonolactone from D-lyxono- and D-ribonolactone, respectively, has been developed.

As pointed out above, aldonolactones/acids may isomerise at C-2 in the presence of strong base. No isomerisations were detected in the reaction of the 2,3-O-isopropylidene-protected lactones 3 and 5 with strong aqueous potassium hydroxide. Likewise, unprotected 5-bromo-5-deoxy-D-lyxono- and -D-ribonolactones give rearrangements to L-ribonic and L-lyxonic acids, respectively [19]. In these cases isomerisation at C-2 was not observed either. It has thus been confirmed that aqueous base requires higher temperatures in order to epimerise at the carbon center $\alpha$ to the carboxylate group.

3.2 Stereoselective Inversion of Configuration at More Than One Carbon Atom in Aldonolactones by Payne Rearrangements

When $\alpha$-activated aldonolactones with six or more carbon atoms are treated with strong aqueous base, the primary epoxides of the polyhydroxy carboxylic acids first formed may rearrange to secondary epoxides, which can finally be opened at C-4 by the carboxylate in a five-membered transition state. The driving force, and thus the success of the stereoselective inversion at more carbon atoms in the polyhydroxy acids, is the final opening of an epoxide at C-4. The method has been used to prepare a number of less available aldonic acids/lactones, as illustrated in the following examples.

6-Bromo-2,6-dideoxy-D-arabino-hexono-1,4-lactone (6) was cleanly transformed into 2-deoxy-L-ribo-hexono-1,4-lactone (7) [21] (Scheme 5). Interestingly, the product 7 can be converted into the starting lactone 6 by a three-step sequence: bromination at C-6 with HBr/HOAc, base-catalysed epimerisation to the arabino-lactone, followed by another bromination [21] (Scheme 5). Monitoring the reaction by $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy revealed immediate formation of the aldonate with a primary epoxy group, which rearranged to the secondary trans-4,5-epoxide, thereby inverting the configuration at C-5. The L-ribo-aldonate appeared within 5 min, as a result of opening of the epoxide by the carboxylate
group, thereby inverting the configuration at C-4 (Scheme 5). After treatment of 6 with 4 molar equivalents of aqueous potassium hydroxide, the reaction was complete within 30 min.

When the 3-deoxy-D-arabino- (8a) [22] or the 2,3-dideoxy-D-erythro analogue (8b) [23] was treated similarly, 3-deoxy-L-ribo- (9a) or 2,3-dideoxy-L-erythro-hexono-1,4-lactone (9b) was formed, respectively (Scheme 6). In all three cases a clean inversion at both C-5 and C-4 had taken place. As outlined above, this is explained by a mechanism involving rearrangement of the primary epoxide to a trans-secondary epoxide (Scheme 6). Both epoxides were observed as intermediates when monitoring the reactions by $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy [21,22].

In the reaction of the 6-bromo-3,6-dideoxyhexonolactone with strong base, however, a minor amount of a five-membered tetrahydrofuran derivative 10 was also observed (17%). This might be formed from the 3-deoxy-5,6-epoxide by attack at C-5 by the hydroxy group at C-2 in competition with attack of the C-4 hydroxy group (Scheme 6) [22]. This is further discussed in Sect. 3.3. In all cases synthetic procedures for the preparation of the lactones 7, 9a and 9b in good yields (Schemes 5 and 6) are outlined.

An interesting example of the rearrangements discussed above is the formation of the enantiomeric lactone from a 7-bromo-7-deoxy-heptonolactone, which means that the configurations at all chiral centers were inverted. For example, when 7-bromo-2,3,7-trideoxy-D-arabino-heptono-1,4-lactone (11) was treated with strong potassium hydroxide, 2,3-dideoxy-L-arabino-heptono-1,4-lactone (12) was formed and isolated as the crystalline peracetate in 47% yield [24]. In contrast, when 11 was treated with aqueous potassium carbonate, work-up gave 2,3-dideoxy-D-arabino-heptono-1,4-lactone (13), i.e. retention of con-
configuration at all stereocenters. Accordingly, depending on the strength of the base used, either of the enantiomeric 2,3-dideoxy-arabino-1,4-heptonolactones can be isolated [24]. The mechanism, which is outlined in Scheme 7, explains the difference. The initially formed 6,7-epoxyaldonate 11a will not undergo a rearrangement in the weaker base, potassium carbonate (pH ~12), as discussed above, and is thus opened at the less-hindered primary carbon by the external nucleophile hydroxide to give the aldonate 11b. Acidification gives the d-arabino-lactone 13. In the more strongly basic potassium hydroxide (pH >14) the epoxide 11a rearranges and in the $^{13}$C NMR spectra the 5,6-trans-epoxide 11c was observed. No other epoxides were observed before the final aldonate 11e appeared. Acidification in this case gave the l-arabino-lactone 12. The l-arabino-aldonate 11e is, however, not obtained by opening of the trans-epoxide 11c, but from the cis-epoxide 11d. The equilibrium between the two epoxides 11c and 11d is shifted towards the more stable trans-epoxide, but the requirements for an internal nucleophilic opening by the carboxylate is only fulfilled by 11d.

3.3 Formation of Five-Membered Cyclic Ethers (Oxolanes) in Competition with Rearrangements of Epoxides

The general requirement for intramolecular nucleophilic opening of an epoxide is, as discussed in the introduction, formation of a five-membered transition
state that has the epoxy group in an exo mode. When a hydroxy group is in such a position this will open the epoxide to give an oxolane, as illustrated in Schemes 3 and 6. In the treatment of 6-bromo-3,6-dideoxy-d-arabino-hexono-1,4-lactone (8a) with a base (Scheme 6) formation of a minor amount of the oxolane 10 was an unwanted side reaction. In other cases the oxolane formation was observed to be the main product, as illustrated in Scheme 8. Thus, when 7-bromo-2,7-dideoxy-d-gluco-heptono-1,4-lactone (14) was treated with potassium hydroxide, a $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of the reaction mixture showed after 5 min the oxolane 15 as the main product, together with the primary epoxide 14a.
The reaction was complete within 2–3 h when the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum showed 15 and a minor unidentified product in a ratio of 4:1. After acidification and treatment with acetone, the isopropylidene-protected lactone 16 was isolated in 42% yield based on 14 [24].

These examples indicate that $\omega$-bromodeoxyhexono- and higher aldonolactones on treatment with base will give primary epoxides which directly, or after epoxide rearrangements, can be opened by a remote hydroxy group, rather than the carboxylate group, to yield oxolanes. This also proved to be the case when 6-bromo-6-deoxy-D-galactono-, -D-altrono- or -D-mannono-1,4-lactone was treated with strong potassium hydroxide. They all gave mixtures of aldonates with inverted configurations at C-4 and C-5, together with oxolanes [25]. Thus, a competition exists between attack of the neighbouring hydroxy group to give a three-membered ether (primary epoxide) and a remote hydroxy group to give a five-membered ether (oxolane) according to Baldwin’s rules. The preferred pathway will depend on the relative energy in the respective transition states leading to the two types of products and will be dependent on the relative stereoisomeric arrangements of the hydroxy groups in the aldonates.

3.4 Base-Induced Rearrangement of $\alpha,\beta$-Epoxyaldonolactones.

Synthesis of L-Gluconic Acid from D-Gluconolactone

In the base-induced rearrangements of epoxyaldonolactones discussed so far, the starting epoxide was the primary one, which rearranged to a secondary, more stable 1,2-disubstituted epoxide. We then asked the question whether $\alpha,\beta$-epoxyaldonolactones, which can be prepared from $\alpha$-bromodeoxyaldonolactones [14] (Scheme 1), might be able to participate in similar base-induced rearrangements, although secondary epoxides “conjugated” to a carboxylic function are rather stable [26]. We have now found that, by treatment with strong potassium hydroxide, 2,3-anhydro-6-bromo-6-deoxy-D-mannono-1,4-lactone (18) can be transformed cleanly into the L-gluconic acid/lactone 19 (Scheme 9) [27]. By monitoring the reaction by $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy the diepoxide $18a$ was observed, immediately followed by rearrangement of the primary epoxide to a secondary one, to give a secondary di-epoxide, probably $18b$. The disappearance of $18b$ and appearance of an epoxyaldonate, probably $18c$, could be explained by the nucleophilic opening of the 4,5-epoxide at C-4 in $18b$ by the carboxylate group. By these rearrangements inversions at C-5 and C-4 had taken place. After 3 days the L-gluconate 19 was the final and only product present. No other intermediates were observed before the final aldonate 19 appeared in the spectra. The structure has been confirmed by isolation and identification as the ethyl L-gluconate and the L-gluconamide.

The mechanism, which explains the configuration of the final product, involves a rearrangement of the epoxide $18c$ away from the carboxylate group through the trans-epoxides $18d$ and $18e$, where the epoxy group is in a position to be opened at C-4 by the carboxylate (Scheme 9). It is worth noting that none of these intermediates were present in detectable amounts during the reaction, showing both the stability of the 2,3-epoxide and the favoured opening at C-4 in
an exo mode in accordance with Baldwin’s rules, as discussed above. Compared with the epoxide 18c the configuration at C-3 in 19 has been inverted [27]. The bromoepoxylactone 18 can be synthesised in two steps from D-gluconolactone [14], and thus a synthetic procedure has been developed to obtain the enantiomeric L-gluconic acid/lactone by a range of stereospecific inversions at all four chiral centers in D-gluconolactone. A simple method for preparation of L-glucose by reduction of the ethyl L-gluconate with sodium borohydride has also been demonstrated [27].

Similarly, we have synthesised 6-deoxy-L-altrono-1,4-lactone (22) from 6-deoxy-L-mannono-1,4-lactone (L-rhamnonolactone) [27] (Scheme 10). In this synthesis, the L-rhamnonolactone was converted into the 2-bromodeoxylactone 20 and further to the 2,3-epoxylactone 21 [14]. Treatment with strong base gave a final aldonate that, after acidification, gave the 1,4-lactone 22, identified as the peracetate. The mechanism was again deduced from $^{13}$C NMR spectra of the reaction mixture, as outlined in Scheme 10.

An interesting feature of these two examples is the strong driving force for an intramolecular opening of an epoxide according to Baldwin’s rules. In these cases the Payne rearrangement causes equilibration between several epoxides, whereby one of those will finally be opened by the first nucleophilic group that is in the right position. In the examples starting from a 2,3-epoxide, the nucleo-
phile will always be the carboxylate group, the first internal nucleophile to fulfill Baldwin’s rules.

At this point a comment is required about the formation of the 2,3-epoxy-d-mannanolactone 18 from the bromodeoxy-d-mannono-1,4-lactone 17 that has the bromine and the hydroxy groups in a cis relationship (Scheme 9). Obviously, a trans relationship between the bromine and the hydroxy group is necessary to form the epoxide within a five-membered ring.

As discussed in the introduction aldonolactones may epimerise at C-2 when treated with strong base due to the acidity of the H-2 proton. This acidity is enhanced by substituents at C-2 that are more electronegative than a hydroxy group. We have shown that both bromine and azido substituents at C-2 are configurationally unstable in the presence of base, also as weak bases as azide ions in acetonitrile or DMF [28]. We have also shown that 2-bromo-2-deoxy-lactones isomerise at C-2 in a, preferably polar, organic medium in the presence of bromide ions [29]. Hence, treatment of the manno-configured bromodeoxylactone 17 in acetonitrile with solid anhydrous potassium carbonate gives the manno-configured epoxylactone 18 quantitatively within 30 min [14]. The epoxylactone 18 was also prepared from the C-2-epimeric bromodeoxylactone with the gluco configuration [14]. This is prepared from d-mannonolactone, while 17 is prepared from the inexpensive d-gluconolactone [14].

The advantage of using the prepared 2,3-epoxylactones for the study of the base-induced rearrangements discussed above is now clear. Direct treatment of the 2-bromolactones with aqueous base will cause rapid epimerisation at that center, and thus in aqueous base the bromodeoxylactone 17 will give both the 2,3-cis- as well as the 2,3-trans-epoxide of the open aldonates. In the lactone form of course only cis-epoxides can be formed. The procedure for preparation of L-gluconic acid is thus performed by stirring 17 in acetonitrile with excess of solid anhydrous potassium carbonate for about 30 min, followed by filtration, concentration, addition of water, and 3 molar equivalents of potassium hydroxide. After 3 days at room temperature the mixture is acidified and the product isolated as the ethyl ester [27].

\[\text{L-Rhamnono-1,4-lactone} \xrightarrow{\text{HBr, AcOH}} \text{Me} \]

\[\text{20} \xrightarrow{\text{KF, acetone}} \text{Me}\]

\[\text{21} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH, H}_2\text{O}} \text{Me}\]

\[\text{22}\]

\[\text{Scheme 10}\]
4

Conclusions

Some general features can be drawn from these investigations. On treatment of a $\omega$-bromo-$\omega$-deoxygenalolactone with aqueous base a primary epoxide of an aldinate was formed immediately. Using a weak base (potassium carbonate, pH < 14) this epoxide was hydrolysed by the solvent. In a stronger base (potassium hydroxide, pH > 14), Payne rearrangement took place yielding 1,2-disubstituted (secondary) epoxides preferentially. trans-1,2-Disubstituted epoxides were formed faster and are thermodynamically more stable than their cis-disubstituted counterparts. Epoxide migration to give cis-1,2-disubstituted epoxides was only detected when these subsequently underwent intramolecular ring opening. Opening of a final epoxide, formed by epoxide rearrangements, was favoured by a five-membered transition state that possessed the epoxy group in the exo mode. The carboxylate or a remote hydroxy group can act as a nucleophile, resulting either in an aldinate with inverted configuration or in an oxolane.

Synthetically useful procedures for the preparation of less readily available aldonic acids from bromodeoxylactones by treatment with strong bases have been demonstrated. These very simple procedures, with no or very little use of protecting groups, are attractive compared with other synthetic methods for the same compounds.

5

References

7. Recently, a two-step two-carbon chain elongation of aldoses by a Wittig/dihydroxylation protocol has been developed: Jørgensen M, Iversen EH, Madsen R (2000) 20th Int Carbohydrate Symposium, 27.08–01.09, Hamburg, Germany, poster B-158
10. For an overview of the available bromodeoxylactones by this method, see Lundt I (1997) Top Curr Chem 187:117
25. Frank H, Lundt I unpublished results
27. Lundt I (2000) 20th Int Carbohydrate Symposium, 27.08–01.09, Hamburg, Germany, poster B-143
Rearrangements in the Course of Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

Karl Dax, Martin Albert

Institute of Organic Chemistry, Technical University of Graz, Stremayrgasse 16, 8010 Graz, Austria
E-mail: dax@orgc.tu-graz.ac.at

Nucleophilic substitutions in polyfunctional heterocyclic compounds such as carbohydrates are accompanied by a series of side reactions including rearrangements. As the mechanistic interpretation for their different types has disclosed the same steric prerequisites and even common intermediates, in this compilation the whole set of side reactions observed in each single case is presented. The neighbouring group (NG) attacks either in a “simple” way [by the one atom which is directly bound to the sugar chain; this form requires antiperiplanar orientation of the NG to the leaving group (LG)] or in a “complex” type [by its third atom (usually a carbonyl oxygen), for which, in pyranoid systems, a trans-diequatorial arrangement of LG and NG is essential]. Possible reactions, besides straight $S_N 2$ by an external nucleophile (including the solvent) or internal nucleophilic atom under formation of a new ring system (IS) as well as elimination (E), arise from anchimeric assistance by a NG and the ring heteroatom, respectively. The latter either causes substitution with retention of configuration (AS) or migration, to the reaction centre, of the participating group (MS). Special types result when in the “complex” case the intermediate acyloxonium ion reacts to give derivatives of an orthoester (ISC) and, generally, besides the anchimercially assisting atom, also the attacking group is an internal one (AIS/AISC and MIS), respectively. Other paths are opened by the involvement of carbon atoms from the sugar chain, which gives rise either to ring contraction with formation of a formyl side chain (MS) or causes fragmentation (F).

Keywords: Anchimeric assistance, Carbohydrates, Deamination, Fragmentation, Group migration, Neighbouring group participation, Nucleophilic substitution, Rearrangement, Ring contraction, Sulfonate displacement

1 Introduction .................................................. 195
2 The Nucleophilic Substitution and Its Possible Side Reactions . . . 195
3 The Nucleophilic Substitution and Its Side Reactions with Carbohydrate-Derived Educts ....................... 201
4 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives ................................. 203
4.1 Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group ........................................... 203
4.1.1 Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-2 .................................. 205
4.1.2 Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-3 .................................. 209
4.1.3 Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-4 .................................. 211
4.2 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group

4.2.1 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-2

4.2.2 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-3

4.2.3 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-4

4.3 Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives at the Primary Position

5 Reactions of Furanose and Septanose Derivatives

5.1 Reactions of Furanoid Educts

5.2 Reactions of Septanoid Educts

6 Reactions of Educts Containing Sulfur or Nitrogen as Ring Heteroatom

6.1 Reactions of Educts Containing Sulfur as Ring Member

6.2 Reactions of Educts Containing Nitrogen as Ring Member

7 Reactions of Educts Stemming from Sugar Derivatives Other Than Aldo(Pyrano/Furano)ses

7.1 Reactions of 2-Triflates of Aldono-1,4- and -1,5-lactones

7.2 Reactions of Carbonyl Groups in Dialdoses and Aldosuloses with DAST

8 Miscellaneous Reactions Related to the Topic

9 Concluding Remarks

10 References

Abbreviations

sym-collidine 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine
DAST diethylaminosulfur trifluoride
diglyme diethylene glycol dimethyl ether
DTBMP 2,6-di-tert-butyl-4-methylpyridine
HFIP 1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoro-2-propanol
MeCN acetonitrile
TASF tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate
TEA triethylamine
TMU N,N,N’,N’-tetramethylurea
TPP triphenylphosphane

Symbols with relation to the reaction mechanism are listed and explained in Sect. 4.1.
1 Introduction

The migration of a single group from one atom to another within the same molecule is called a rearrangement reaction. As the group that migrates in the course of a nucleophilic substitution reaction has to carry the electron pair with it, this transformation is also classified as an intramolecular nucleophilic substitution. When taking mechanistic details into consideration, such as, e.g., the existence of a charged cyclic intermediate or stability criteria for carbenium ions, the close relationship of this type of reaction to other possible pathways like substitution, by an external nucleophile, with retention of configuration and side reactions like elimination or fragmentation becomes evident. Thus, in this chapter, the primary aim is to give a synopsis of the whole reaction pattern observed in selected nucleophilic displacement or solvolysis reactions. Secondly, the potential of some recent developments made in this area for synthesis will be briefly highlighted.

2 The Nucleophilic Substitution and Its Possible Side Reactions

The nucleophilic substitution reaction at alkyl carbons represents one of the most investigated types of reactions in organic chemistry [1]. The plethora of data concerning its dependence on factors like the structure of the educt (neutral or charged; constitution, configuration and possible conformation), the character (neutral or charged; base strength) of the leaving group as well as the attacking nucleophile (nucleofugicity vs. nucleophilicity) and, especially, the solvent (polarity, ionising power, possible nucleophilic assistance) and other reaction parameters (pH-value, catalyst, temperature) represents a unique training facility in chemical education. For a comprehensive mechanistic explanation, despite the generally accepted types of a mono- (S_N1) or bimolecular (S_N2) substitution, their “simultaneous operation” and several other possibilities like the concept of “ion pairs which react at different states of solvation” (a mechanism somewhere “in-between S_N1 and S_N2”) or a “single-electron transfer (SET) mechanism” have been proposed to cover even borderline phenomena [1]. In particular, the controversies surrounding a possible discrete intermediate in such reactions, the classical or nonclassical carbenium ion, have given much impact to the general understanding and further development of organic chemistry. With the studies on the scope of nucleophilic substitution reactions, even with monofunctional educts, their close relationship to elimination (E1, E2, E1cA and E1cB) as well as intramolecular, nucleophilic rearrangement reactions (alkyl and hydride shifts) has become evident. For many instances, depending on the governing mechanism, common intermediates (classical/nonclassical carbenium ions or ion-pairs) or identical transition states (E2C/E2H) have been proposed.

In the case of educts which contain other functionalities of nucleophilic character (OH/OR, SH/SR, NH_2/NHR/NR_2 with R = alkyl, acyl, alkyl- or arylsulfonyl, etc.) besides the leaving group (LG), additional reaction pathways are
opened up by a possible intramolecular participation of these neighbouring groups (NGs). As exemplified with the participation of oxygen-containing species from a vicinal position (Schemes 1 and 2), the paths may be classified, according to the mode of interaction involved, as “simple” (Scheme 1) and “complex” (Scheme 2) and include the following possibilities:

1. Direct intramolecular nucleophilic substitution (by unsubstituted OH, SH, NH$_2$ or NHR) with formation of a heterocyclic ring (route a, symbol IS).
2. “Anchimeric assistance”, which results – via formation of positively charged cyclic intermediates (route b or b’) – either in (an enhanced rate of) direct substitution by the external nucleophile under retention of configuration [route (b + c) or (b’ + c’), symbol AS] or nucleophilic migration of the neighbouring group and entry of the external nucleophile at the vicinal position with configurational inversion at both ends [route (b + d) or (b’ + d’), symbol MS].
3. Additionally, attack of the external nucleophile at the first C-atom of the participating group in the charged intermediate can occur to give an anhydrol ring (route b + e, “simple” NG, symbol IS) or a cyclic orthoester derivative [route (b’ + e’) in the case of “complex” type, symbol ISC]; the latter product may, when water is used as the nucleophile, lead to (one or both of) the isomeric diol monoesters shown in Scheme 2 (symbol Hy) with inverted configuration at the position of the original activation [for clarity it should be added that these latter structures are also prone to O,O-acyl migration (symbol AcM)]. Thiols and their acylated derivatives react analogously.

For NGs consisting of an acylated amino group (as shown in Scheme 3 with amides and urethanes) participation may occur either via the amino nitrogen (“N-attack”, “simple” case, IS) or the carbonyl oxygen (“O-attack”, “complex” case, ISC). Thus oxazolines 1 or aziridines 2 and oxazolones 3, respectively, are formed.

![Scheme 1](image-url)
In cyclic systems, these modes of intramolecular participation from vicinal positions are restricted to a trans-orientation between the LG and the participating NG. Strictly speaking, for the attack of the carbonyl oxygen in educts containing an ester, amide or urethane grouping (see Scheme 2 and the cases of “O-attack” in Scheme 3), an arrangement close to a trans-diequatorial one is essential, whereas for reactions leading to three-membered rings (see IS, Schemes 1 and 3) the existence of a conformation containing an antiperiplanar orientation of the LG and the NG (at least under the reaction conditions applied) is required.

An antiperiplanar steric relationship between the LG and the respective participating group is also a general prerequisite for the remaining types of side
reactions of nucleophilic displacements. These are two mechanistically closely related pairs of reactions: hydride and alkyl shift on the one hand, elimination (E2) and fragmentation on the other. Whereas within the first pair a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group migrates intramolecularly as a nucleophile (together with the electron pair of the former covalent bond), in the second case, a proton or carbocation, the latter necessarily stabilised by an unshared pair of electrons from an OH/OR or NR₂-substituent, is released (as an electrofuge) from the vicinal position to the LG.

Concerning the mechanisms of these kinds of reactions, currently no general pattern can be given. However, useful hints are to be found in the stereochemical consequences of the reaction inasmuch as concertedness manifests itself by stereochemical homogeneity of the final product, whereas the existence of intermediates (stabilised carbenium ions) will, to some extent, cause racemisation at the centre in question. In Scheme 4 plausible mechanistic versions of the side reactions in nucleophilic displacements as observed in oligofunctional educts are depicted (together with the corresponding symbols and, in brackets, the specification of the participating atom). These include hydride shift (MS[H], route f), alkyl shift (MS[C], routes g), elimination (E[H], route h) and fragmentation (F[C], routes i), respectively. [Depending on the kind of protecting group present in the educt, some of the products thus formed (especially hemiacetals and enol esters) are prone to rapid hydrolysis (Hy).]

The strong connection between some of these different routes and the stereochemical parameters discussed above is illustrated in Table 1 with the results obtained by Sicher and his group [2] from the nitrous acid deamination of the four diastereomeric 2-amino-4-tert-butylcyclohexanols, which predominantly
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Intermediate</th>
<th>Main Product</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>yield (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Intermediate 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Main Product IS(0)" /></td>
<td></td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Intermediate 6" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Main Product MS[H]" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HClO₄, H₂O [pH4] pentane, trans-decaline 0°C, 2 h</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Intermediate 8" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Main Product MS[C]" /></td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Intermediate 10" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Main Product MS[C]" /></td>
<td></td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
assume a chair conformation with the voluminous tert-butyl group in equatorial orientation. [Treatment of primary amines with nitrous acid leads to alkylidiazonium compounds (RN\textsubscript{2}\textsuperscript{+}, as shown with structures 4, 6, 8 and 10). These release N\textsubscript{2} (one of the best leaving groups) to generate highly reactive, unsolvated (“hot”) carbenium ions, which are believed to allow the formation of the final products determined by the conformation of the ground state (rather than by electronic factors in the transition state).]

In each case, product formation was found to have been dominantly or exclusively determined by the participation of an antiperiplanar arranged neighbouring group. Thus, from the educts containing an axially oriented amino group, the one with trans-diaxially arranged substituents (entry 1) gave anhydro compound 5 (by intramolecular S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction according to IS, route a, Scheme 1), whereas in the other case (entry 2), deoxy ketone 7 was formed (by a hydride shift corresponding to MS[H], route f, Scheme 4). In the reactions of structures 8 and 10, which each contain an equatorially oriented LG, participation of the antiperiplanar C-1/C-6 bond (according to an alkyl shift MS[C], path g, Scheme 4) elapses independently of the configuration at C-1 and gives rise to ring contraction under generation of a formyl side chain (product 9). The formation of the same product 9 (1–3%) in the reactions shown in entries 1 and 2 was rationalised [2] as having been caused by “some stereochemical leakage at the carbenium ion stage”. The lower yields of unpolar products generally observed in these latter reactions as compared to those found in entries 3 and 4 were explained as the result of the concurring solvolysis of the intermediate diazonium compounds 4 and 6 to give polar glycols, which were not isolated.

In nucleophilic substitution reactions with educts derived from heterocyclic rather than alicyclic systems, the ring heteroatom (rO, rS or rN) may, under the steric requirement of an antiperiplanar arrangement with the (necessarily equatorial oriented) LG, participate in the reaction mechanism in a similar fashion to neighbouring groups in acyclic structures or side chains (see Scheme 1): AS [route (b + c)], MS [route (b + d)] or IS [route (b + e)]. This is exemplified in Scheme 5 by the solvolysis of (R)-3-chloro-1-ethylpiperidine (11), which on treatment with aqueous sodium hydroxide, by way of the intermediate aziridinium ion 12, gives [3] the product of ring contraction 13 (MS[rN]; rN denotes the ring nitrogen) as well as of substitution with retention of configuration 14 (AS[rN]).
The higher number of given functionalities and, in particular, the exponential number of possible steric relationships with each other in carbohydrates allow an even more complex reaction pattern to be expected. A further multiplier to these options arises from any feasible conformational flexibility of the educt under the reaction conditions applied. Although the results reported in the literature so far do not cover reactions of all possible constitutional and configurational instances, and systematic investigations under comparable conditions are rare, essential questions have long been rationalised by using conformational principles. This is also evident from important reviews in this field, where either the mechanistic background of these reactions or their preparative potential has been illustrated. Of special interest on the subject of deamination reactions is the excellent contribution of Williams [4] and, on sulfonate displacement reactions, those of Goodman [5], Ball and Parrish [6], as well as Binkley [7]. Furthermore, Defaye [8] comprehensively described the formation of 2,5-anhydrides of sugars by ring-contraction reactions based on intramolecular nucleophilic substitution at C-2 of aldopyranosides by the tetrahydropyran ring oxygen. Hanessian and Pernet [9], Yoshimura [10], de Lederkremer and Varela [11], as well as Redlich [12] have also briefly highlighted the significance of this and other types of ring contractions in natural product synthesis.

In the following outline of the present state of our knowledge concerning side reactions of nucleophilic substitutions, emphasis will primarily be placed on the situation in deamination and “desulfonyloxylation” (sulfonate displacement) reactions with the detailed review of Williams [4] on the one hand and that of Ball and Parrish [6] on the other serving as points of reference. As it is not intended to discuss the actual mechanistic implications (S_N1- vs. S_N2-type) of each reaction presented, we propose the general “working hypothesis” that all steps in a single transformation elapse simultaneously except those parts where “hot” carbenium or stable oxocarbenium ions (including cyclic oxiranium, thiranium or aziridinium ions, which contain C-1) are involved. The latter species is of importance in ring contractions and fragmentations where a C-atom, especially C-1, takes the role of an electrofuge. The main arguments serving as a basis for this mechanistic simplification consist of the stereochemical consequences deduced from the configuration of the respective products and the dependence of product ratios as well as reaction rates on the nucleofugicity of the LG as well as the nucleophilic strength of partners present.

Thus, beyond the seminal contributions on deaminations, side reactions were found to most frequently occur in attempted sulfonate displacements when poor nucleophiles, especially fluoride, or the conditions of solvolysis were applied. In this way, impetus for the development of better LGs, represented by trifluoromethanesulfonates (triflates) and imidazolesulfonates (imidazylates), as well as more powerful nucleophiles, e.g., tetraalkylammonium salts, was added. In the case of intended fluorinations, the classical “sulfonate/flouride tandem” [usually triflate/tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF) or triflate/tris(dimethylamino)
sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate (TASF) as well as the even more powerful “activation/fluorination route” employing diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST) reached their limits. (In Scheme 6 the general equation for the latter transformation, which involves the activated species 15, is shown.) Thus, problems in nucleophilic fluorination reactions could not be generally overcome; however, formation of certain side products in nucleophilic substitution reactions (neighbouring group migrations including ring contractions) reached preparative significance and opened new synthetic strategies. The fascinating results obtained in this field until 1989 are collected in the outstanding review of Tsuchiya [13]; an attempt to update this work was recently undertaken by us [14].

The following presentation of a selection of the most significant results is organised in such a way that, first, reactions of educts derived from aldopyranoses are generally treated. To allow a rapid scan through the vast number of individual entries, the cases are separated into those starting from educts containing an axially and equatorially oriented LG, respectively. After characteristic examples obtained with pyranose derivatives of different configuration, single results obtained with educts from the furanose and septanose series are presented. This section is followed by a description of the situation with analogous educts containing nitrogen or sulfur as a ring member. Throughout, intramolecular reactions with participation of exocyclic (side chain) functionalities are discussed in brief only, whereas those observed with acyclic compounds are generally omitted. Another section is devoted to the reactions of the 2-triflates of aldonolactones and the preparative potential thereof. Although not strictly fitting into the topic of nucleophilic substitution (but showing parallels to it), the mode of reaction of the carbonyl group in dialdoses and aldosuloses with the nucleophilic reagent diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST) will also be discussed. Finally, some further facets of side reactions are shown from examples related to those discussed before.

Not embodied in this collection are results which were obtained from reactions of carbohydrate-derived educts activated (or latently activated) for nucleophilic substitution at C-1. These species allow easy cleavage of the activating group to form oxocarbenium ions, which involve participation of vicinal ester or amide groups. Thus, independently of the steric situation in the original educt, attack occurs by the carbonyl oxygen (ISC, cf. Schemes 2 and 3) to form a cyclic acyloxonium ion 16 and an oxazoline 17, respectively. The regioselective opening, at C-1 or at the C-atom of the former carbonyl group, allows the synthesis of glycosides with 1,2-trans configuration and of 1,2-cyclic orthoesters 18, respectively; the latter in turn are also prone to rearrange into glycosides.

Another interesting case is the so-called “intramolecular aglycon delivery”, in which, from the centre of a cyclic 2,3-orthoester 19 or of a mixed acetal 20 or 21,
the aglycon (OR’) stereoselectively migrates to the anomeric carbon. This latter reaction is of special value in the synthesis of 1,2-cis-configured β-D-mannopyranosides. As excellent reviews covering all facets of interest on this topic are available [15], no further details will be mentioned in this context.

For a correct interpretation of the collected data in the following tables, it should be mentioned that the significance of each single reaction cited finds its measure in the given total yield of isolated products. In only a few cases were all compounds formed isolated and identified, whereas in many other examples formation of a single product in only low yield is reported. This latter situation may not be interpreted as an indication that other possible reaction paths have been excluded under the conditions applied.

No special mention is made concerning the reaction conditions as they are given in the tables. Generally, deamination (amino sugar/NaNO₂/HOAc/H₂O), hydrolysis [sulfonates/acid scavenger (pyridine)/H₂O], substitution reactions [sulfonates/poor nucleophiles (especially the triflate/fluoride tandem)] or the DAST route (OH-unprotected sugar/DAST) are the main sources of side reactions.

4
Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives

4.1
Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group

For reactions starting from educts containing an axially oriented leaving group in pyranose derivatives, according to the general statements made in the introduction, besides the direct nucleophilic substitution with inversion of configuration (including nucleophilic participation of the solvent), intramolecular reactions under participation of an axially oriented NG from a vicinal position only are possible. For this reason, no ring atom can participate and, as a consequence, no change in ring size will be observed. The possible side reactions thus left include intramolecular substitution (IS, route a, Scheme 1), anchimeric as-
istance with or without group migration (MS, AS and IS, route b together with c, d or e, Scheme 1), hydride shift (MS[H], route f, Scheme 4) and elimination (E[H], route h, Scheme 4). As the choice depends [16] on the given position of activation, the stereochemical relationship of the LG to possible participating groups in the educt, their ranking in terms of nucleophilicity, as well as the relative stability of the carbenium ion possibly formed, representative examples for all kinds of reactions, including older but essential results from deamination reactions, are presented. According to the position of the LG (C-2, 3 or 4), the results are collected in Tables 2, 3 and 4.

Within these tables, the mechanisms, as anticipated to have been operative in the formation of individual products, are indicated by the following symbols:

- **IS** [intramolecular nucleophilic substitution with inversion of configuration by a neighboring substituent under formation of a (small) heterocyclic ring]
- **ISC** [intramolecular substitution by the third atom of a carbonyl-containing NG under inversion of configuration at the position of the original activation and either entry of the nucleophile at the carbon of the original carbonyl group (to form an orthoester derivative) or elimination of another substituent (to give an oxazoline, oxazolone, etc.)]
- **AS** [anchimerically assisted substitution with retention of configuration at the position of the original activation]
- **MS** [substitution by migration of the participating group and entry of the nucleophile at the position where the NG departs with inversion of configuration at both centres involved]
- **E** [elimination, E2]
- **M/E** [in cases where a plausible decision between hydride shift and an elimination cannot be made]
- **F** [fragmentation]

For the very few cases where a second intramolecular grouping of nucleophilic character participates in one single reaction, additional symbols are introduced herewith:

- **AIS** [anchimerically assisted substitution, by another internal nucleophilic group, with retention of configuration at the position of the original activation]
- **MIS** [substitution by migration of the first participating group and entry of another internal nucleophilic atom at the position where the group having lent anchimeric assistance departs, with inversion of configuration at both centres involved]
- **MISC** [substitution by migration of the anchimerically assisting group and intramolecular substitution by a carbonyl oxygen of another NG under inversion of configuration at the position of the original activation as well as that of the departure of the assisting group with entry of the nucleophile at the carbon of the original carbonyl group (to form an orthoester derivative)].

In all instances where a NG is involved, the position of activation, the type [“H” for hydrogen, “NG” for a functional group, “rO”, “rN” or “rS” for the heteroatom
of the sugar ring] and the original location of the partner is given in brackets; for all cases where anchimeric assistance and intramolecular substitutions are involved, both partners are cited. Additionally, general chemical transformations, such as $S_N2$ (nucleophilic substitution with inversion of configuration by an external nucleophile including the solvent) or hydrolysis of certain functionalities ($Hy$), acyl migration ($AcM$), transesterification ($TE$), epimerisation in the vicinal position to a newly formed carbonyl group ($Ep$), hemiacetal or acetal formation between a newly formed carbonyl and an alcoholic OH-group ($HAF$ or $AF$) or $E1cB$-elimination (to form an $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compound, $E1cB$), are indicated.

The numerous reports on successful substitutions with inversion of configuration (often in joint occurrence with eliminations) are not cited and their dependence on the type of leaving group, the character of the nucleophile and details of the conditions are not discussed.

4.1.1
*Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-2*

In the selected educts with $d$-manno configuration (Table 2, entries 1–6), the potentially participating, axially oriented NGs are: the hydrogen atom at C-3 (in all instances), and either the hydrogen atom at C-1 [in the case of 2-amino-1,5-anhydro-2-deoxy-$d$-mannitol (entry 1) and the $\beta$-anomers (entries 2 and 3)] or, in educts of $\alpha$ configuration, the aglycon (entries 4–6). The participation of axially oriented hydrogen atoms, principally allowing elimination as well as hydride shift reactions (the latter obviously predominating in deamination reactions), under comparable conditions shows preference for the involvement of the more stable carbocations (cf. entries 1 [17] and 2 [18]). 3-Uloses, formed by hydride shift or hydrolysis of enol esters/ethers (resulting from eliminations), are prone to $E1cB$ elimination ($Hy + E1cB$, entries 3 [19] and 4 [20]). Participation of an antiperiplanarly arranged alkoxy substituent at C-1 or C-3 leads, by anchimeric assistance, either to alkoxy migration under inversion of configuration or at both centres involved (MS, entries 5 [21], 6 [22], 7 [23], 8 [24] and 10 [25]) or to substitution at C-2 with retention of configuration (AS, entry 8 [24]). An axial OH-group at C-3 causes oxirane formation with inversion of configuration at C-2 ($IS$, entry 9 [26]). A 1,2-epoxide, formed by the corresponding attack of an axial OH-1, was not isolated, but was proposed [18c] as a possible intermediate. The result of the deamination reaction shown in entry 10 [25] is of special interest as, obviously for steric reasons, a group migration (resulting in an enlargement of the anhydro ring) and not oxirane formation (by attack of OH-3) was observed. In all cases where the NG departs from C-1, both anomers of the respective MS-product were isolated, thus giving evidence for the intermediate existence of a stable oxocarbenium ion.

Results of special significance have been reported from attempted fluorinations of benzyl 3-azido-4,6-$O$-benzylidene-3-deoxy-$\alpha$-alto- and -$\beta$-idopyranosides using the triflate/fluoride tandem as well as the DAST route [27]. As is evident from the product pattern in entry 11, participation of both axially oriented NGs (MS[2,NG-1] and MS[2,NG-3]) occurs; therefore, strict mechanistic
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>( \Sigma ) (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product 1" /></td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product 2" /></td>
<td>NaNO(_2), HOAc/H(_2)O [pH 3.6], rt, 6 h</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product 3" /></td>
<td>TBAF, benzene reflux, 2 h</td>
<td>( \geq 57 )</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product 4" /></td>
<td>TBABr DMF/HMPA 50 °C, 15 h</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O rt, 2 h</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, diglyme 100 °C, 30 min</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ 0 °C→reflux, 15 h</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 15 h</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O 0 °C</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O rt, 6 h</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>( \Sigma ) (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image1" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image2" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image3" alt="" /></td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 2 h</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image4" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image5" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image6" alt="" /></td>
<td>CsF, DMF 70 (^{\circ})C, 5 h</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image7" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image8" alt="" /></td>
<td><img src="Image9" alt="" /></td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 1 h</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
discrimination between AS[2,NG-3] and AS[2,NG-1] cannot be made for the product of fluorination with retention of configuration. For the involvement of the azido group, an unusual intermediate “azidonium (= 1-aziridinediazonium) ion” has been postulated (see the discussion on azide participation in [5]). Whereas on treatment with CsF in DMF the triflate with β-d-ido configuration (entry 12 [27b] underwent smooth SN2 displacement, under the same conditions its C-4 epimeric analog (α-altro configuration) remained unchanged. The formation of a product of aglycon migration from a cis orientation (entry 13 [27b]) is unexpected as long as the role of the axial azido group at C-3 is not fully understood.

The type of aglycon shift depicted in entry 6 [22] was at the same time also described by Nicolaou’s group [28] from the DAST reactions of a series of 2-OH-unprotected α-d-mannopyranose derivatives with an alkoxy, acetoxy, phenylthio or azido group as substituent at C-1, respectively. A general mechanistic explanation given for all migrating groups involves a positively charged three-membered ring as well as the (C-1)-oxocarbenium ion (see also Sect. 4.2.1). Of special interest from these series is the reaction sequence (Scheme 7) that sets off from thioglycoside 22 to initially give a mixture of 2-phenylthio-d-glucopyranosyl fluorides 23 and allows selective access to 2-deoxy-α- or -β-glycosides 25 in excellent yields. In the second step, the stereocontrolled glycoside formation 24, use is made of NG and solvent participation, respectively. The synthesis completes with desulphurisation.

Another example of outstanding synthetic importance and based on a 1,2-migration is the so-called “sulfonamidoglycosylation” [29a], developed by Griffith and Danishefsky. The reaction sequence starts with a glycal and leads to glycosides of 2-amino-2-deoxy-hexoses. Scheme 8 shows the respective transformation of tri-O-acetyl-d-glucal (26) to (1,2-trans-diaxially substituted) N-benzenesulfonyl-2-deoxy-2-iodo-α-d-mannopyranosyl amine (27), which (in the presence of a strong base, silver triflate and another sugar containing an unprotected OH-group) reacts to yield the disaccharidic β-glucosaminide 29. In the second step, involvement of the intermediate aziridine 28 (compare structure 2 formed by “N-attack” in Scheme 3) was anticipated. Recently, this methodology was extended [29b] to the solid-phase synthesis of oligosaccharides.

4.1.2
Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-3

With educts containing an axially oriented LG at C-3, in addition to an intramolecular SN2 reaction with an axially oriented hydroxy or acetamido group in a vicinal position (IS, Table 3, entries 1 [26] and 2 [30]), elimination and/or hydride shift (E or M/E, entries 3 [30], 4 [31] and 6 [32]), as well as substitution with retention of configuration (AS, entries 7 and 8 [27b]) have been observed. For the transformation outlined in entry 4, 2,6-di-tert-butyl-4-methylpyridine was used as acid scavenger, since pyridine per se in a similar reaction had caused SN2 displacement (entry 5 [33]). Of special interest are the results from the deamination of methyl 3-amino-3-deoxy-β-d-allopyranoside (entry 6), where the main reaction consists of direct SN2 displacement with formation of methyl
Scheme 7

Scheme 8
β-d-glucopyranoside. Amongst the side products 31–34, a new principle appears, that further multiplies the possible output-number: Epimerisation (Ep) in a vicinal position to a carbonyl group. This functionality results from a rearrangement reaction, in this case, hydride shift (MS[3,H-4] to yield 31) and ring contraction (MS[3,C-5] to give 33), respectively. [Compound 33 originates from the participation of the C-4/C-5 bond and thus proves conformational inhomogeneity of the educt, as indicated by the depiction of both chair conformers (although for this particular reaction other conformers may be responsible [32]).

The reactions of educts containing an equatorially oriented LG at C-3 are treated in detail in Sect. 4.2.2. The epimerization at C-3 of product 33 leads to a species containing both side chains on the same ring side, which gives rise to the formation of furanoid hemiacetals 34 (HAF).

As seen from the results shown in entries 11–13 [27] in Table 2, an axially oriented azido group is capable of participation and this is confirmed with the substitution under retention of configuration (AS) found in entries 7 and 8. The latter case may alternatively or additionally also have been caused by the axial benzyloxy substituent at C-4.

### 4.1.3
**Reactions of Educts Containing an Axially Oriented Leaving Group at C-4**

In Table 4 representative results as obtained with educts containing an axially oriented LG at C-4 are compiled. These include direct nucleophilic substitution, by the external nucleophile (SN, entries 1 [32], 3 [34], 5 [35] and 6 [36]) or the solvent (entries 3 and 4 [35]), hydride shift and/or elimination (MS[H], E[H], M/E[H], entries 1, 2 [37], 4 and 6 [36]). Special attention is called to the following results:

1. In entry 1 [32], formation (2%) of substitution product 35 with retention of configuration. (As anchimeric assistance cannot be visualised, it may be the consequence of the existence of a “hot” carbenium ion; therefore, the mechanism is designated as SN only.)
2. In entry 2, the DAST reaction of a kanamycin A derivative [37], the loss of the hydrogen atom at C-3 under cleavage of the cyclohexylidene acetal with concomitant fluorination, under inversion of configuration, at C-5 of the deoxystreptamine (DOS) part (3-AG denotes the 3-amino-3-deoxy-d-glucose moiety). [In reactions of educts also containing trans-diaxial orientation of the LG (at C-3) and hydrogen (at C-4) together with a 4,6-benzylidene acetal grouping (Table 3, entries 1–3) this M/E-type was not observed; see also Sect. 4.2.2.]
3. In entry 5 [35], the isolation of “glycosyl fluoride” 36 (15% yield). [Its formation was assumed to have involved elimination, stereoselective fluoride attack at C-5 and protonation. An alternative mechanism may consist of hydride shift (MS[4,H-5]) and reaction, with fluoride, of the intermediate oxocarbenium ion to form the more stable anomer.]
4. In entry 6 [36], the isolation of either of the possible side products formed by elimination 37 (E[4,H-5] and 38 (E[4,H-3]).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product(s) 1" /></td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product(s) 2" /></td>
<td>TBAF, MeCN reflux, 20 h</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product(s) 3" /></td>
<td>TBAF, MeCN reflux, 4 h</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product(s) 4" /></td>
<td>DTBMP/benzene 80 °C, 30 min</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Educt 5" /></td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Product(s) 5" /></td>
<td>pyridine 100 °C, 15 min</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>∑ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>S\textsubscript{N}2 (main product)</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>MS[3,H-4] 31 (7%) + Ep[C-5] 32</td>
<td>DAST, CH\textsubscript{2}Cl\textsubscript{2} rt, 5 h</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>27b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>MS[3,C-5] 33 (5%) + Ep[C-3]+HAF 34</td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 30 min</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>27b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product Image" /></td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>&gt;50</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 2 | ![Educt Image](image3) | ![Product Image](image4) | 1. DAST, CH₂Cl₂  
rt, 5 h  
2. H₂O | 50 | 37 |
| 3 | ![Educt Image](image5) | ![Product Image](image6) | NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O  
0 °C | 82 | 34 |
Table 4 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>NaF, DMF rt, 15 h</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ 0 °C → rt, 1 h</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>DAST dimethoxyethane 60 °C, 15 min</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2
Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group

When, under the assumption of conformational homogeneity, looking at the set of reactions possible with educts containing an equatorially oriented LG, hydride shift (MS[H], route \( f \), Scheme 4) and elimination (E[H], route \( h \), Scheme 4) cannot be found. However, besides the direct nucleophilic substitution with inversion of configuration (by the external nucleophile or the solvent, \( S_N2 \)), all other sorts of participation, from vicinal positions, by antiperiplanarly oriented substituents – including each single ring atom of the pyranose – appear. These are in particular:

1. Participation of a (trans-located, likewise equatorial) neighbouring acyloxy or acylamino group, which follows the pattern outlined in Scheme 2 and with the cases of “\( O \)-attack” in Scheme 3, respectively.
2. Participation of the ring heteroatom according to routes \( (b + c) \), \( (b + d) \) or \( (b + e) \) (Scheme 1) becomes feasible as soon as the LG is located at C-2 and C-4, respectively. A general survey of the reaction paths with educts from the pentopyranose series, including the respective intermediate oxiranium ion (39 or 44), is given in Schemes 9 and 10. (Within hexopyranose derivatives, reactions of type \( e \) additionally cause inversion of configuration at C-5.) The individual species are:
   a. Substitution with retention of configuration at the original position of the LG [route \( (b + c) \), Schemes 9 and 10] giving products 40 (AS[2,rO]) and 45 (AS[4,rO]), respectively.
   b. Migration of the ring heteroatom and entry of the nucleophile at the origin of the migrating group with inversion of configuration at both positions [route \( (b + d) \), Schemes 9 and 10]. The net result of this rearrange-
ment reaction is ring contraction, of the pyranose, to form a derivative of 2,5-anhydralactose 41 (MS[2,rO]) and of aldonofuranose 46 (MS[4,rO]), respectively.

c. Attack at C-1 in 44 [route (b + e), Scheme 10] opens the pyranose ring to give the 4,5-anhydro derivative of the (open-chain) aldose 47 (IS[4,rO]). [The corresponding reaction with 39 [route (b + e), Scheme 9] has not yet been observed; however, with water as the nucleophile, it should lead (via the highly reactive structure 42, IS[2,rO]) to an aldose with inverted configuration at C-2 (43) and, in hexopyranoses, at C-2 and C-5, respectively.]

3. The possible involvement of ring C-atoms in side reactions of nucleophilic displacements with carbohydrate-derived educts – in the form of an alkyl migration (routes g, Scheme 4) or fragmentation reaction (routes i, Scheme 4) – is outlined in Schemes 11 and 12.

a. As in an alkyl migration, the C-atom shifts as a nucleophile (in taking the electron pair with it), provision has to be given in the educt structure for a stabilisation of the carbocation thus created. The oxocarbenium ion, as normally involved with educts from this class of carbohydrates, leads to a formyl side chain with inversion of configuration at the terminus (cf. routes g, Scheme 4). Thus, in such products from the carbohydrate series, the side chain takes the same position (“above” or “below” the sugar ring) as the LG did in the educt. However, as will be demonstrated below, the product structure allows epimerisation (Ep). As shown in Scheme 11, with educts containing the LG at C-2, C-4 migrates (MS[2,C-4]) and vice versa (MS[4,C-2]); in each case, C-3 forms the cation and is converted into the formyl side chain. For educts containing an equatorial LG at C-3, two C-atoms, namely C-1 and C-5, could migrate (MS[3, C-1] or MS[3,C-5], routes g, Scheme 12) with C-2 or C-4 forming the side chain.
b. Fragmentation affords a well-stabilised carbocation to be eliminated from the vicinal position. In carbohydrate-derived educts, the most stable carbenium ion arises, by heterolytic cleavage of the C-1/C-2 bond, at the anomeric centre (C-1). Consequently, use of this fact is made in solvolysis reactions of certain educts containing the LG at C-3 (F[3,C-1], route i, Scheme 12). As the direct product of fragmentation, enol derivative 48, constitutes a precursor to a 2-deoxyaldose, the net effect of this type of fragmentation consists of shortening the sugar chain by one C-atom (C-1) and introduction of a deoxy grouping at C-2.

In analogy to the presentation chosen in Sect. 4.1, an arbitrary selection of characteristic results is collected in Tables 5, 6 and 7 arranged according to the position of the LG. Whenever possible, for each product depicted, an indication concerning the mechanism of its formation is given by using the symbols explained in Sect. 4.1.

4.2.1
Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-2

In deamination reactions with methyl D-glucosaminides (Table 5, entries 2 [38a], 3 [38b] and 4 [39a]), attack of the ring oxygen at C-2 (MS[2,rO]), to form
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Educt_1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Product_1" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, H₂O/HOAc, rt, 2 h</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Educt_2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Product_2" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, H₂O/HOAc, rt, 1 h</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>38a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Educt_3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Product_3" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, [pH 3.5], rt, 12 h</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>38b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Educt_4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Product_4" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, NaOAc, H₂O/HOAc, rt, 2 h</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>39a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 [image]</td>
<td>AS([2,\tau O]) R = Ac (36%) or S(_N)2 (4%)</td>
<td>NaNO(_2), HOAc rt, 1 h</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>38a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ISC([2,\tau G-1]) or S(_N)2 (4%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS([2,\tau O])+Hy (12%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+E (5%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 [image]</td>
<td>S(_N)2 (n.g.)</td>
<td>NaOBz, HMPA 90 °C, 5 h</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS([2,\tau O]] (62%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 [image]</td>
<td>TBAN(_3), toluene 80 °C, 6 h</td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 [image]</td>
<td>DAST, CH(_2)Cl(_2) 0 °C → reflux, 2 h</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Diag" /></td>
<td>TBAN₃, toluene 80 °C, 6 h</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Diag" /></td>
<td>NaN₃, DMF 40 °C, 15 h</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>beta-anomer MS[2,rO] (81%)</td>
<td></td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Diag" /></td>
<td>3HF/TEA, TEA, MeCN rt, 16 h</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>beta-anomer MS[2,rO] (55%)</td>
<td></td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Diag" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 5 h</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

54, 56
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="F-molecule" /></td>
<td>TBAF, MeCN reflux, 2.5 h</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product" /></td>
<td>TBAF, MeCN reflux, 30 min</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Product" /></td>
<td>NaH, THF 0°C</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product" /></td>
<td>TBANO2, MeCN reflux, 6 h</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Product" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, DMF rt, 6 d</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, DMF rt, 2 d</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product 1" /></td>
<td>⁷⁻BuOH, <em>sym</em>-collidine, toluene reflux, 2 h</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product 2" /></td>
<td>pyridine/DMF 75 °C</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product 3" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 5 h</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product 4" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 5 h</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td><em>l</em>-BuOH, <em>sym</em>-collidine, toluene reflux, 6 h</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>24 50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
derivatives of 2,5-anhydro-d-mannose, is the dominating reaction path. In the presence of water and independent of the anomeric configuration (entry 3), participation of C-4 (MS[2,C-4]) to (originally) form 2-C-formyl-d-arabinofuranosides, which epimerise to the ribo-isomers, is also observed. Of special interest is the result shown in entry 4 [39a] as this MS[2,rO]) ring contraction was, in no single other case, observed with educts (compare entries 15–23) containing a 4,6-benzylidene acetal protection of the trans-decalin type. (In this work [39a] older results that claimed formation of 4,6-O-benzylidene-d-mannose from the same reaction [39b] have been corrected; however, the structural depiction of the reaction product shows d-gluco configuration.) The essential role of the aglycon in stabilizing intermediate carbenium ions can be deduced from the reaction of 2-amino-1,5-anhydro-2-deoxy-d-glucitol (entry 1 [40]), where substitution with retention of configuration (AS[2,rO]) dominates. The same applies for the case of an O-acylated derivative (entry 5 [38a]). There, additionally, direct SN2, by acetate, or substitution under participation of the (trans-located) acetoxy group at C-1 [ISC[2,NG-1] according to route (b’ + d’), Scheme 2] took place. Furthermore, the product of ring contraction (49, MS[2,rO]) was found to be subject to elimination to give 50. (The deficit in the total yield was assumed to be a consequence of O,N-acetyl migration.)

In entries 6–24, characteristic results obtained from substitution reactions of 2-sulfonates and from the DAST reaction of educts containing an unprotected OH-group at C-2 are collected. They show dependence on the type of protecting groups present. Whereas monocyclic educts, independent of the configuration at other chiral centres (entries 6 [41], 7 [42] and 8 [23]), as well as derivatives of galactose and arabinose, which contain a 3,4-O-isopropylidene protecting group (entries 9 [42], 10 and 11 [43], 12 and 13 [44] as well as 14 [45]), are predominantly subject to ring contraction (MS[2,rO]), none of the derivatives of methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-α- or -β-d-glucopyranoside (entries 15 and 16 [46], 17 [47], 18 [48], 19 and 20 [49], 21 [50], 22 [51] or 23 [45]) give that particular reaction (but see entry 4). Dependent on the type of protecting group at O-3, they show, besides straight SN2, other forms of neighbouring group participation. (Of these, the ISC[2,NG-3] mode depicted in entries 21 and 22 is of importance in the stereoselective synthesis of β-d-mannopyranosides. Formation of a cyclic carbonate and iminocarbonate in the latter case follows the “O-attack-route” shown in Scheme 3.) When the same reaction is carried out with a pair of anomers (entries 15/16 [46] and 19/20 [49], respectively), the β-anomer reacts faster and gives a higher yield. In entries 18 and 20, the respective product formed in minor proportion is the result of either acetyl migration following the SN2 or of participation of the acetoxy group in the substitution step according to the ISC mode [route (b’ + e’) + Hy, Scheme 2]. The involvement of the latter mechanism is proved (entry 21) by the isolation of orthoester 51 (ISC[2,NG-3]) in the solvolysis reaction, with tert-butyl alcohol as the nucleophile. When a lower alcohol was used, the product with the orthoester structure of type 51 reached a proportion of more than 90%, as roughly estimated by TLC [50].
In this series of reactions, at C-2 of glucopyranosides, the following details are of interest:

1. Formation of 2,3-anhydro compound 52 (IS[2,O-3]) in the course of a triflate displacement (entry 19 [49]). Under the conditions cited, the anhydro ring formation was not observed with the corresponding β-anomer (entry 20), but occurred with both anomers almost exclusively when tert-butoxide in tert-butyl alcohol (or TBAF in toluene) was applied. As a corollary, excellent yields of $S_N2$ products were obtained, again with both anomers, in reactions with good nucleophiles (e.g. azide in DMF).

2. Formation of a product of aglycon migration (53, MS[2,NG-1]) in a DAST reaction (entry 23 [45]), whereas an analogous educt, but using the triflate/TBAF-tandem reaction, allowed smooth introduction of fluorine by $S_N2$ displacement (entry 16 [46]).

According to the general “rules” presented in the introductory sections, both results cannot be envisaged to have taken place as a result of the given diequatorial steric relationship between the LG (at C-2) and the participating group (OH at C-3 or OMe at C-1) in the educt. Thus conformational flexibility of this peculiar part of the otherwise – especially in the region of trans-annelation – rigid molecule has to be anticipated [49]. However, this principle is not as general as published results [28] would suggest. At least in one single reinspected case, the DAST treatment of benzyl 3,4-O-isopropylidene-α-D-arabinofuranoside (54, the enantiomer of the original educt, entry 14 [45]), the claimed formation of a product of aglycon migration (55, MS[2,NG-1], 66%), could not be reproduced as the reaction led to a product of ring contraction (56, MS[2,rO], entry 14).

In contrast to the results obtained with the 4,6-O-benzylidene-protected educt of the gluco series (entry 23), methyl 3-O-benzoyl-4,6-O-benzylidene-β-D-galactopyranoside (57, entry 24 [45]), on treatment with DAST, underwent ring contraction to form 58 (MS[2,rO]) only. On the other hand, from the solvolysis reaction of the benzyl galactoside 59 (entry 25 [50]), in analogy to the situation found in the gluco series (entry 21), formation of a side product also containing an orthoester structure (60, ISC[2,NG-3], 12%) has been claimed. However, close inspection of the NMR data revealed [24] that the structural assignment has to be changed to 61 (MS[2,rO], entry 24).

From these findings, priority rules concerning the option “ring contraction vs. aglycon migration” in attempted displacements at C-2 of hexopyranosides
containing an equatorially oriented LG (but no NG of the “complex type” in equatorial position at C-3) can be deduced:

1. Independent of the anomeric configuration, ring contraction (MS\[2,\text{rO}\]) is the first choice in all monocyclic educts as well as in cases where a cis-fused 3,4-O-isopropylidene or cis-fused 4,6-O-benzylidene ring is annellated. [The first situation is given in educts with arabino and galacto configuration, the second in the galacto (and gulo) series.]

2. As soon as a trans-fused 4,6-O-benzylidene ring is present (possible in the gluco and allo series), ring contraction is impeded (but see the result shown in entry 4, which might be explained by the involvement of a “hot” carbenium ion). However, in the case of a trans-diequatorial arrangement of the NG, at C-1, and the LG, at C-2, aglycon migration (MS\[2,\text{NG-1}\]) may take place. The latter occurs obviously with more ease than in cases of O-glycosides when more nucleophilic NGs (arylthio, azido, acetoxy, etc.) are located at C-1 [28].

To emphasise the importance of this ring contraction during the course of substitution reactions at C-2 discussed above, an example with preparative attraction [52] is outlined in Scheme 13 (the transformation is also operative with the \(\alpha\)-anomer). Here advantage is taken of the (regular) ring contraction of – monocyclic – glucopyranosides under solvolytic conditions, after they had been used as chiral auxiliaries in the asymmetric cyclopropanylation of allyl alcohols.

4.2.2

Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-3

Concerning the results collected in Table 6, the following comments on reactions starting from educts containing an equatorially oriented LG at C-3 can be made: with good nucleophiles, S_N2 is convincingly operative (e.g., entry 4 [49]). Incidentally, participation of the solvent may appear as a side reaction if a potentially participating NG does not interfere (cf. entries 3 [53] and 8 [54a]).

In the absence of a good nucleophile, the involvement of an NG capable of participation becomes dominant. Starting from a vicinal trans disposition of LG and NG in the educt, besides anchimerically assisted substitution with retention of configuration (AS[3,NG-2], entry 8) and group migration (MS[3,NG-2], entry 8), participation of NGs of the “complex” (ISC[3,NG-2], entries 7 [54b], 11 and 12 [47], (ISC[3,NG-4] + Hy), entry 14 [55]) as well as the “simple type” (IS[3,O-2], entry 5 [49]) have been observed. In some instances, e.g., for the results shown in entry 6 [48], discrimination between an (S_N2 + AcM) and an (ISC + Hy) mechanism cannot be made. Of special interest is an unusual “triflate rearrangement”, reported by Binkley [55] during his efforts to
fully elucidate the reactivity of carbohydrate triflates. Its embedment into the types of NG-assisted reactions is illustrated in Scheme 14.

According to Binkley's observations, treatment of methyl 4-O-benzoyl-2,6-dideoxy-β-β-arabinof-hexopyranoside in CH₂Cl₂, with triflic anhydride in the presence of DTBMP, rapidly leads to formation of triflate 62, which – simply upon standing at room temperature for 4–8 h – rearranges into the highly reactive “orthoester triflate” 64. The structures of compounds 62 and 64 were deduced from their respective spectroscopic data and confirmed by a series of chemical transformations. Thus, as shown in Scheme 14, immediate treatment of the triflation mixture (containing 62) with tetra-n-butylammonium bromide (TBABr) gave the Sₐ₂ product 65 (93%), whereas the same procedure, applied to a triflation mixture which had stood for 4 h at room temperature (containing 63/64), under retention of configuration gave the AS product 66 (74%). Analogous treatment with methanol led, by the ISC mode, to a mixture of orthobenzoates 67 (95%). Most interestingly, treatment with tributyltin hydride caused reduction to yield the 3,4-benzylidene acetal 68 (82%). (A similar acetal-forming reaction is known to occur upon LiAlH₄-treatment of 2-O-acylated aldo-pyranosyl bromides.) Reaction of the rearranged triflate 63/64 with water (cf. entry 14) produced, by hydrolysis of the ISC product with or without AcM (see Scheme 2), the 3-benzoate 69 with inverted configuration at C-3 (77%). This “triflate rearrangement” was also observed with the corresponding α-anomer [55].

For reactions producing or involving three-membered ring systems (I[S/3, O-2] in entry 5 and MS/AS[3,NG-2] in entry 8, respectively), conformational flexibility is required (cf. entry 19, Table 5, and the arguments raised there).

Scheme 14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;HO\text{Me}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;MO\text{Me}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>NaNO₂, HCl, H₂O 0°C → rt, 3.5 h</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS[3,C-5] (major) MS[3,C-1]+Ep (minor)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;Ph\text{TfO}\text{BnO}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;HO\text{BnO}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>DTBMP/H₂O/HFíP reflux, 1.5 h</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS[3,C-5]+HAF (92%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;Ph\text{TfO}\text{BnO}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;Ph\text{OBn}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O/toluene reflux, 1 h</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MS[3,C-5]+HAF (62%) S₈₂ (5%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F[3,C-1]+Hy (11%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;Ph\text{TfO}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;chem&gt;\text{Me}\text{Me}&lt;\chem&gt;</td>
<td>NaN₃, DMF rt, 1 h</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S₈₂ (85%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>$\Sigma$ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>$t$-BuONa, $t$-BuOH 23 °C, 2 h</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaNO$_2$, DMF 60 °C, 18 h</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>pyridine 65 °C, 1.5 h</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>54b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOBz, DMF 60 °C, 4 h</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>54a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>$\Sigma$ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>MeOH (sealed) 100 °C, 6 min</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>54a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>MeOH (sealed) 100 °C, 25 min</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>54a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>NaH, THF rt, 12 h</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>![Image](76x141 to 366x613)</td>
<td>NaH, THF 0 °C, 3 h</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>$\Sigma$ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>MS[3, C-5] + Hy + E (27%)</td>
<td>pyridine/H$_2$O/HFIP reflux</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>ISC[3, NG-4] + Hy (77%) 69</td>
<td>DTBMP/H$_2$O/CH$_2$Cl$_2$ rt, 12 h</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>MS[3, C-5] (54%)</td>
<td>DTBMP/CH$_2$Cl$_2$ $-20\degree$C $\rightarrow$ rt, 30 min</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>MS[3, C-5] (65%)</td>
<td>DTBMP/benzene $80\degree$C, 30 min</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>F[3, C-1] (45%) + Hy (30%) 75</td>
<td>TBAOBz, toluene/H$_2$O reflux, 6 h</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td><img src="structure18.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O 100 °C, 25 min</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td><img src="structure19.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O/HFIP reflux, 1 h</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td><img src="structure20.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O/HFIP reflux</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt21" /></td>
<td>NaN₃, DMF, rt, 18 h</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt22" /></td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O/HFIP, rt</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt23" /></td>
<td>pyridine/H₂O/HFIP, rt</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 (continued)
Of further interest is that a trifluoroacetamido group, under conditions of a displacement reaction, gives “N-attack” only (entry 8), whereas, under conditions of solvolysis, ring contraction (see entries 9 and 10) and no participation is observed. The forced participation of a N-benzylo carbamate group, depicted in entries 11 and 12, shows dependence in the mode of attack (O- or N-cyclisation) on the anomeric configuration.

Deamination reactions with educts containing an equatorially oriented LG at C-3 follow the “alkyl shift routes” (Scheme 4), especially MS[3,C-5] and/or MS[3,C-1] (Scheme 12). In each case, the ring-contracting step proceeds with inversion of configuration at the position of the original activation only, so that the formyl side chain in the products takes the same steric position (“above” or “below” the plane of the sugar ring) as the LG did before in the educt. This is illustrated in Scheme 15, where the directly formed products 71 and 73, arising from educt 70 in the 4C₁ conformation, have their side chain “above” the plane. A speciality of importance in this context [4] results from the tendency of these ring-contracted products containing a formyl side chain, on the one hand, to epimerise at the branching point (symbol Ep, see structure 74) and, where possible, to form furanoid hemiacetals (symbol HAF, see structure 72) with the OH-group (or any nucleophilic substituent) from the original side chain (the former C-6) on the other. The MS[3,C-1] mode is intrinsically of minor importance as it was reported from the reaction of methyl 3-amino-3-deoxy-β-D-xylopyranoside only (entry 1 [56]). The same results as for deaminations have also been obtained in solvolysis reactions with otherwise unprotected 3-sulfonates of methyl hexopyranosides [57].

As elaborated within the last 15 years by the pioneering work of Binkley, Castillon as well as Knapp, the choice for the reaction path in displacements, with poor nucleophiles, of educts containing an equatorial LG of high nucleofugicity (generally triflate) is primarily dependent on the configuration at C-4. Thus educts containing an equatorial substituent (xylo, gluco and manno configuration, entries 1 [56], 2, 3, 13 and 23 [53], 9 and 10 [54a] and 15 [31]) at C-4 are easily subject to ring contraction of the type MS[3,C-5] (see Scheme 15), whereas those with an axially oriented substituent (galactose derivatives, entries 17 [33], 19 and 20 [53]) give fragmentation. As far as can be judged from results
obtained under different conditions, the latter generalisation is infringed in those cases where the OH-group at C-4 or C-2 is unprotected. Here ring contractions, i.e., MS[3,C-5] (entry 16 [31], cf. entries 15 and 17) and MS[3,C-1] (entry 21 [49], cf. entry 19), have been found instead of fragmentation. Furthermore, if anything at all can be deduced from the limited number of examples known so far, the options soon merge into one as soon as a 2-benzylxy substituent together with a 4,6-O-benzylidene protection of the trans-decalin type (F[3,C-1] in entry 3 [53]) or a 2-deoxy function and an α configuration together with a 4,6-O-benzylidene protection of the cis-decalin type (MS[3,C-5] in entry 22 [53]; cf. entry 23) is present. In comparison, α-anomers show a lesser tendency to give fragmentation than their corresponding β-anomers (cf. entries 17 and 18), for which effect “proper orbital alignment” at C-1 and C-3 was thought to be essential [33a]. Generally, the ring-contraction reactions do not show remarkable sensitivity towards the type of protecting groups present, as, in the MS[3,C-5] course, those from C-4 and C-6, including the 4,6-alkylidene acetal, are cleaved. Castillon et al. [53a] have provided a mechanistic explanation that is based on the stability of a carbocation in the benzylidene moiety. However, in the gluco series, it also occurs with 4,6-cyclohexylidene acetals and may therefore simply be the consequence of the hydrolysis of the oxocarbenium ion formed with C-4 in the course of the ring contraction. The direct product of fragmentation contains a formate grouping, as in 75 and 77 (entries 17 and 19). Its hydrolysis liberates an OH-group at the former C-5 as shown with alkenol 76. In the case of 77 (entry 19), however, the liberated OH-group directly adds to the enol ether under formation of 2-deoxypentofuranoside 78. A further side reaction consists of elimination. This is found with conformational flexible educts of the 2,6-dideoxyhexose series (entries 17 and 18) and with 3-formylpentofuranosides containing a trans relationship between H-3 and the substituent at C-2 (entry 13).

In striking contrast to the general tendency of educts of the glucose series to give ring contraction MS[3,C-5] rather than fragmentation F[3,C-1], is the long-known transformation of 3-O-mesyl-d-glucose (80) into 2-deoxy-d-ribose (81) [58]. As outlined in Scheme 16, alkaline treatment (pH 8.0–8.5) of 80, which is easily accessible by acid hydrolysis of 1,2:5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-3-O-mesyld-glucofuranose (79), causes this fragmentation and allows isolation of 81 (in the form of its anilide) in a yield of 40–50% (unfortunately, no comments concerning the possible structures of by-products were given).
4.2.3
Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives Containing an Equatorially Oriented Leaving Group at C-4

For educts containing an equatorial LG at C-4, the possible reaction paths involving ring members (rO and C-2, respectively) as participating groups have already been presented in Sect. 4.2 (see modes AS, IS, MS[4,rO] in Scheme 10 as well as MS[4,C-2] in Scheme 11). All of these reactions have been found operative in the deamination of methyl 4-amino-4-deoxy-α-D-glucopyranoside [59] (entry 1). Of special interest therein is the highly reactive compound 82 (4,5-anhydro-D-galactose, formed by IS[4,rO]) and the products of its hydrolysis 83 (L-altrose, by opening of the anhydro ring at C-4) and 84 (D-glucose, by opening at C-5). This IS[4,rO])-type of reaction was also discussed to explain the formation of D-glucose (84) in the solvolysis of methyl 4-O-p-nitrophenylsulfonyl-α-D-glucopyranoside [60] (entry 3). Recently, the stable 4,5-anhydro sugar 86 was isolated in 40% yield by chromatography from the DAST reaction of methyl 3,6-dideoxy-3-C-methyl-3-nitro-α-L-glucopyranoside [23] (85, entry 4). The MS[4,C-2] mode of ring contraction is of minor importance and the reaction product (a 3-C-formylpentofuranoside) is subject to Ep + HAF (epimerisation and hemiacetal formation, see entry 1). The most significant rearrangement to be observed with this class of educts is the MS[4,rO] mode of ring contraction (entry 2 [34a], entry 4 [23], entries 6–8 [61]). As this reaction (under inversion of configuration at C-4 and C-5) opens easy access to 5-substituted hexofuranosides, it has already been used for various syntheses [62]. A special case with involvement of this MS[4,rO] option is shown in entry 10 [31]. It has been proposed that the unusual oxetane ring in product 87 is formed by intramolecular S_N2 reaction in the rearranged triflate 89, that in turn results, by rearrangement, from the intermediate oxiranium ion 88. However, the formation of 87 can also be envisaged to have taken place by intramolecular attack, at C-5, of the 3-OH-group in the state of intermediate 88 with concomitant opening of the C-5/rO bond (MIS[4,rO/O-3]).

Of particular significance to the methodology of fluorine introduction into carbohydrate molecules by nucleophilic substitution is the work of Morishima [61]. As depicted in Table 7, the DAST route (entries 6, 7 and 8) gave AS[4,rO] and MS[4,rO] exclusively, whereas the triflate/TASF tandem allowed SN2 reaction together with AS[4,rO] (entry 5) or E[4,H-3] (entry 9).

When good nucleophiles are applied to triflates, straight SN2 occurs (entries 11 and 12 [33c] and 13 [48]). In the latter case, although diequatorial orientation of LG and NG-3 was given, a single product was isolated (cf. entry 18, Table 5, and
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical Structures" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O</td>
<td>&gt;57</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>$\Sigma$ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>![Educt Image]</td>
<td>![Product Images]</td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O 0°C, 1.5 h</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS[4, rO] R = H or Ac (30%)</td>
<td>MS[4, rO] R = H or Ac (70%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>![Educt Image]</td>
<td>![Product Images]</td>
<td>acetate buffer [pH 4 - 5] 100°C, 5 h</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R = pNO₂PhSO₂</td>
<td>AS[4, rO] (50%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S₅₂ (8%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MS[4, rO] (8%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>84 (trace)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>![Educt Image]</td>
<td>![Product Images]</td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ reflux, 1.5 h</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>MS[4, rO] (46%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IS[4, rO] (40%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>![Educt Image]</td>
<td>![Product Images]</td>
<td>TASF, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 1.5 h</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S₅₂ (54%)</td>
<td>AS[4, rO] (13%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>![Educt Image] <img src="66%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="17%25" alt="Product Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ −13 °C → rt, 2 h</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>![Educt Image] <img src="2%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="38%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="39%25" alt="Product Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ −13 °C → rt, 2 h</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>![Educt Image] <img src="28%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="21%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="34%25" alt="Product Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ −13 °C → rt, 2 h</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>![Educt Image] <img src="21%25" alt="Product Image" /> <img src="24%25" alt="Product Image" /></td>
<td>TASF, CH₂Cl₂ rt, 1.5 h</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>![Educt Image] <img src="54%25" alt="Product Image" /> 87</td>
<td>DTBMP/benzene 80 °C, 30 min</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>TBAOBz, toluene</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>33c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reflux, 30 min</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>TBANO₂, toluene</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>33c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23 °C, 2 d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td>NaNO₂, DMF</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 °C, 1 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td>DTBMP/H₂O/CH₂Cl₂</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>55c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rt, 24 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>NaH, THF</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rt, 6 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
entry 6, Table 6). The solvolysis reaction shown in entry 14 [55c] followed the one described in the preceding section (entry 14, Table 6 and Scheme 14). The rearranged triflate involved in this transformation is of the structure \(90\). A case of NG participation from an axial, non-vicinal position, namely ISC[4,NG-2], is shown in entry 15 [47].

4.3
Reactions of Pyranose Derivatives at the Primary Position

For attempts at \(S_N\) reactions which start from educts containing their LG at a primary position, a first general reduction in the number of possible product structures arises from the lack of chirality at the reaction centre. Thus, besides \(S_N1\) vs. \(S_N2\), different, per se competing mechanisms lead to the same product. This is exemplified in Scheme 17 with the participation of the NG from C-4, where either \(S_N2\) or \(AS[6,NG-4]\) and, in the case of DAST reaction, \((ISC[6,NG-4] + Hy)\) and AcM, respectively, may be operative.

A further reduction in the number of products to be expected has its origin in the lack of importance of the participation of the ring oxygen. An intermediate oxiranium ion of structure \(91\), comprising atoms C-6, C-5 and rO, would give rise (see Scheme 18) to the mechanistic types \(AS[6,rO]\) (by attack at C-6 to produce \(93\)), \(MS[6,rO]\) (by attack at C-5 with inversion of configuration to give ring enlargement to the septanose derivative \(92\)) and \(IS[6,rO]\) (by attack at C-1 under production of 5,6-anhydroaldose \(94\)). However, product formation other than by \(AS[6,rO]\) (indistinguishable from straight \(S_N\)) has not been observed (but see reactions of 5-thioaldopyranose derivatives, Sect. 6.1). Nevertheless, to explain certain results from the deamination reaction of 1-amino-2,6-anhydro-1-deoxy-alditols, an intermediate, similar to \(91\) but involving C-1, C-2 and rO, has been suggested [63].
In contrast to these restrictions, the special position of the reaction centre above the ring plane together with a conformational flexibility opens additional ways for participation of NGs (Table 8). As in educts from the d-series (adopting the $^4C_1$-conformation), the side-chain orientation changes from equatorial to axial, cis-located (likewise axial) substituents in position 1 or 3 may interfere. This is demonstrated with the 1,6-aglycon shift MS[6,NG-1] (out of a $\beta$-d-configuration exclusively, entries 1 [64] and 3 [65]) as well as 3,6-anhydro ring formation IS[6,O-3] (with a benzyl ether as participating NG, entry 2 [64]). As has been discussed in detail [64] the course of the reaction depends on the nature of the protecting group at O-2. The ester functionality (entries 1 and 3) eases the rearrangement (by formation of an intermediate acyloxonium ion of type 16) and causes entry of the nucleophile (fluoride) from the $\beta$-face. Of some interest are the results shown in entry 4 [65], where on attempted DAST fluorination at C-6, products 95 and 96 were isolated instead of the expected 6-deoxy-6-fluoro compound (analogous to 97 in entry 5 [65]). As an explanation, the migration of the 2,4-dimethylbenzoyl protecting group from O-4 to O-6 with, in part, subsequent $S_N2$ fluorination was given.

According to Scheme 17, the product ensemble 95/96 may – via an intermediate acyloxonium ion (see Scheme 2) – also be the result of MS[6,NG-4] and (ISC[6,NG-4] + Hy), respectively. However, straight $S_N1$, including solvent participation, together with hydride shift MS[6,H-5] and elimination E[6,H-5] (for deaminations and sulfonate displacements, respectively), is the general standard reaction repertoire (entry 6 [66a]). This latter work is of special value as a subtle study on the influence of the kind of leaving and protecting groups, fluorinating agent, solvent and other parameters on a single transformation (the introduction of fluorine at C-6 of d-galactose). In this context, another thorough investigation from the same laboratory, describing scope and limitations of the DAST fluorination of benzyl-protected d-glucopyranose derivatives, is worthy of attention [66b].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product(s) 1" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ -45 °C → rt, 3 h</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product(s) 2" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ -45 °C → rt</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product(s) 3" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ 0 °C → rt, 1 h</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product(s) 4" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ 0 °C → rt, 12 h</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Educt 5" /></td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Product(s) 5" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ 0 °C → rt, 5 d</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image11" alt="Educt 6" /></td>
<td><img src="image12" alt="Product(s) 6" /></td>
<td>TASF, CH₂Cl₂ -30 °C → rt, 12 h</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Reactions of Furanose and Septanose Derivatives

5.1 Reactions of Furanoid Educts

When turning our attention to the situation of nucleophilic substitution reactions in furanose derivatives, an important simplification arises from the fact that, according to our present knowledge, no single product has been isolated for which participation of the ring oxygen atom or another ring member had been anticipated. A further reduction in the quantity of side reactions results from the poor number of possible *trans* relationships (known to be essential for participation) within LGs and vicinal NGs located in the furanose ring. In contrast to this, the probability of the involvement of NGs from the side chain is drastically raised, as all ring positions (except the branching point C-4) are prone to interference.

In Table 9a few characteristic types of reactions are collected. They comprise, besides straight $S_N^2$ (entries 2 [67], 8 [68], 9 [69] and 10 [70]) and various eliminations (entries 3 [67], 4 [71], 7 and 8 [68] as well as 10), $IS$ (entries 1 and 6 [72] as well as 9), $MS[NG]$ (entries 1 and 5 [71] as well as 11 [73]) and $AS$ (entry 7).

The most important features are: in attempted reactions at C-2, straight $S_N^2$ is operative in cases of *cis* configuration at C-1 and C-2 only (entry 2); for educts containing a *trans*-relationship of aglycon and LG, aglycon migration $MS[2,NG-1]$ is the major reaction path in deamination and DAST reaction (entries 1 and 5), whereas the triflate/fluoride tandem sequence leads to elimination only (entries 3 and 4). As expected, a *trans* relationship between the LG and the OH-group located in positions 2/3 and 3/2, respectively, gives rise to formation of 2,3-anhydro compounds ($IS[2,O-3]$, entry 1, and $IS[3,O-2]$, entry 6).

Nucleophilic substitution reactions at C-5 of hexofuranoses are known to be prone to NG participation, either by attack of an acyl group located at C-6 [74] or the OH-group at C-3 [75]. Elucidation of the mechanistic features, which are operative in attempted fluorine introduction at C-5 in 3-O-benzyl-6-deoxy-1,2-O-isopropylidenehexofuranoses, brought the following results [68]: the triflate/fluoride tandem shows inclination to trigger elimination, whereas the DAST route rather mediates substitution by fluoride. However, depending on the orientation of the 3-O-benzyl group with respect to the side chain (entries 7 and 8), dramatic differences in the stereochemical course of this $S_N$ reaction can be observed as, in educts with a *trans* relationship, inversion of configuration ($S_N^2$ to form 99, entry 8) and, in the case of *cis* orientation, retention of configuration ($AS[5,NG-3]$ to yield 98, entry 7), predominate.

In entry 9, the general reaction pattern from the DAST treatment of 1,2-O-isopropylidene-$\alpha$-d-glucofuranose and its derivatives with the OH-3 position free (or protected as an ether) is depicted. Besides the $S_N^2$ product 100 [69], varying proportions of 3,6-anhydro compounds are additionally formed by $IS[6,O-3]$ (when starting from a 3-benzyl ether, formation of benzyl fluoride is observed by $^{19}$F NMR spectroscopy). In the case of the 3-acetate shown in entry 10, no NG participation but (to a minor extent) $E[5,H-6]$ was observed [70].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image5.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image6.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>TBAF, THF</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image8.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image9.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>-10 °C → 0 °C, 5 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image10.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image11.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image12.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>TBAF, THF</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image13.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image14.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image15.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>-10 °C → 0 °C, 5 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image16.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image17.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image18.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>TBAF, THF</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image19.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image20.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image21.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>-10 °C, 2 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image22.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image23.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image24.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>DAST, toluene</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image25.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image26.png" alt="Image" /> <img src="image27.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>60 °C, 2 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
<td>( \Sigma (%) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaNO₂, HOAc/H₂O</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Product 1" /></td>
<td>72</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂, -10 °C → rt, 90 min</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product 2" /></td>
<td>68</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂, -10 °C → rt, 90 min</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Product 3" /></td>
<td>63</td>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9 (continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 9" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product 9" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂, -40 °C → rt, 2 h</td>
<td>&gt;70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 10" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product 10" /></td>
<td>TBAF, MeCN, rt, 14 h</td>
<td>&gt;75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 11" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product 11" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂, -15 °C → rt, 24 h</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MS[5,NG-1], an aglycon migration different from MS[2,NG-1] outlined in entries 1 and 5, was observed on attempted fluorination by DAST of methyl 2,3-O-isopropylidene-β-d-ribofuranoside 101 [73] (entry 11). The β configuration found in the final ribofuranosyl fluoride 102 is rather the result of the thermodynamic equilibration than a mechanistic consequence.

5.2 Reactions of Septanoid Educts

Only a few attempts at nucleophilic substitution reactions with educts derived from (conformationally flexible) septanoses are known [76]. As can be seen from Table 10, besides straight S_N2, only elimination reactions have been reported [77]. Of interest is that in attempted substitutions of the epimeric 5-tosylates 103 and 105 (entries 1–3), the E[5,H-4] reaction (to give 104 containing a bridge head double bond) is preferred over the E[5,H-6] mode (which produces the glycal type 106); however, the latter product predominates when bulky bases (t-BuOK in t-BuOH, entry 4) are applied.

6 Reactions of Educts Containing Sulfur or Nitrogen as Ring Heteroatom

The change in the type of ring heteroatom from oxygen to sulfur or nitrogen gives rise to characteristic shifts in the reaction pattern in those cases where participation of the ring heteroatom represents one of the possible paths (see Sects. 4.2.1 and 4.2.3 concerning educts with an equatorial LG in positions 2 and 4 in pyranosides). As compared to the situation with oxygen in the ring, the more powerful nucleophilicity of nitrogen and, especially, sulfur gives reason for a dominating role of AS- and MS-types of side reactions in attempted nucleophilic substitutions. Additional to the rS participation in educts activated at positions 2 and 4, the hitherto unprecedented involvement of position 6 in an-chimerically assisted reactions comes into play.

6.1 Reactions of Educts Containing Sulfur as Ring Member

The results obtained with educts from a series of 5-thiopentopyranoses carrying an equatorial LG at position 2, 3 or 4 only show AS[4,rS] (entries 1, 2 and 4, Table 11), MS[4,rS] (entry 1) and MS[2,rS] (entry 3), the latter independent of the anomeromic configuration [78a]. Activated positions incapable of rS participation, as given for C-3 in entry 1, do not react under the mild conditions of these an-chimerically assisted transformations. Of further interest is that educt 107, which contains a 2,3-acetal protection out of a trans configuration, is subject to AS[4,rS] reaction only after it has lost this grouping (therefore the ring strain was thought to inhibit formation of the [rS/C-5/C-4]-thiranium ion [78a]). Contradictory are the results observed with educts bearing a cis-acetal protection. Whereas dominance of the ring-contraction MS[rS] modes in entries 1 and 3 fulfills general expectations (concerning ring strain and carbenium ion stability, respectively), this type is missing in entry 2.
Table 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product 1" /></td>
<td>LiOBz, DMF 140 °C, 24 h</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product 2" /></td>
<td>LiOBz, DMF 125 °C, 40 h</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product 3" /></td>
<td>MeONa, MeOH reflux, 50 h</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product 4" /></td>
<td>t-BuOK, t-BuOH 80 °C, 48 h</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, HOAc/H₂O 100 °C, 45 min</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, HOAc/H₂O 100 °C, 45 min</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, HOAc/H₂O 100 °C, 45 min</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, HOAc/H₂O 100 °C, 45 min</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image9.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image10.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, HOAc/H₂O 100 °C, 45 min</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(\text{AS}[6, rS] \ (74%)) 110, (\text{MS}[6, rS] \ (13%)) 111</td>
<td>(\text{BaCO}_3, \text{MeOH}) reflux, 2 h</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>78b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(\text{HCl, MeOH}) (20 ^\circ C, 24 h)</td>
<td>(96)</td>
<td>78b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(\text{BaCO}_3, \text{TEA.HCl}) (\text{MeOH})</td>
<td>(54)</td>
<td>78b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>(\text{BzOH/TPP/DEAD}) (\text{THF}) (0 ^\circ C)</td>
<td>(80)</td>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>( \Sigma (%) )</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[MS[5,rS]+AS[2,rS] (43%) 118]</td>
<td>BzOH/TPP/DEAD THF 20 °C</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[MS[5,rS]+MS[2,rS] (33%) 119]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[IS[5,0-2] (61%) 121]</td>
<td>BzOH/TPP/DEAD THF 20 °C</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[MS[5,rS]+MS[2,rS] (24%) 122]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Essential findings on the exceptional role of rS participation came from Hughes’s and Le Merrer’s work with 5-thiohexopyranosides (entries 5–8 [78b]) and polyhydroxylated thiepanes (entries 9–11 [79]), respectively. First, the enhanced nucleophilicity of sulfur over oxygen was shown by the selective methanolysis (as well as benzoate displacement) of the 4-mesyloxy group in the 4,6-dimesylate 108 (to give 109, entry 5), whereas the corresponding educt with oxygen in the ring (d-allopyranoside), under the same conditions, did not react, but gave selective substitution at C-6 when treated with sodium benzoate in boiling DMF [78b]. When treating 6-mesylate 109 under more forced conditions (entry 6), evidence for the involvement of a thiranium ion comprising rS, C-5 and C-6 arose from the isolation of (ring-enlarged) septanoside 111 besides the AS/SN\textsubscript{2} product 110. An explanation for this behaviour was deduced from conformational studies undertaken with dimesylate 108. According to these, the LG at C-6 adopts an “axial” orientation (depicted as 108a in Scheme 19) inappropriate for rS participation (as the latter requires the arrangement shown in 108b).

Second, methanolysis with the 2,3-disulfonate 112 (entry 7) gave reaction at C-2 only (ring-contraction MS[2,rS]) in excellent yield. Third, treatment of the (conformationally flexible) 2,6-dimesylate 113 initially also gave ring contraction involving C-2 (MS[2,rS]), but this was immediately followed by [rS/C-5/C-6]-thiranium formation and opening of the latter, either at C-6 (AS[6,rS]) to give ring-contracted product 114, or at C-5 (MS[6,rS]) to produce 115 (as a consequence of ring contraction and ring expansion involving rS shift from C-1 to C-2 and from C-5 to C-6).

The peculiar participating and migrating disposition of sulfur as the ring heteroatom was employed in the synthesis of various thiosugars from 2,5-dihydroxythiepanes 116 and 120 (showing C\textsubscript{2} symmetry) by a Mitsunobu reaction [79]. Thus, with 116 in the presence of benzoic acid (BzOH), triphenyl phosphane (TPP) and diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD) at 0°C, MS[5,rS] was operative to form ring-contracted product 117. At 20°C, this ring contraction was followed either by AS[2,rS] to produce the 2,6-dibenzoate 118 or by MS[2,rS] to give 1,6-dibenzoate 119. The same reaction sequence, a twofold ring contraction leading to 1,6-dibenzoate 122, was also observed to occur in a minor proportion with the (diastereomeric) educt 120. The main reaction consisted of an intramolecular substitution with inversion of configuration of the first Mitsunobu-activated OH-group (at C-5) by the unaffected other (IS[5,0-2]) to give 2,5-anhydrothiepane 121. Interestingly, from the series of “normal” sugar derivatives, no single case has come to our attention where a Mitsunobu reaction had led to side reactions of the MS-type. [Zamojski et al. [80] studied the corresponding reaction with otherwise unprotected methyl \(\alpha\)- as well as \(\beta\)-d-glucopyranoside. The products formed in the \(\beta\)-series showed involvement of SN\textsubscript{2} (at C-6 and C-3, 91%,

![Scheme 19](image-url)
thus opening a new entry in the d-<i>allo</i> series), which in part was followed either by AcM (from O-3 to O-4) or AS[4,rO] and (AS[4,rO] + AS[2,rO]), respectively; additionally, the product of (IS[6,O-3] + Sn2[4]) was formed in trace amounts. From the α-series, these workers isolated 11 products (82% total yield), which all showed Sn2[6] followed (either consecutively or alternatively) by IS[3,O-2], IS[4,O-3], Sn2[3], Sn2[4], AS[4,rO]), AS[2,rO]) and AcM, respectively.

In relation to the depiction of products formed by ring contractions of septanoid educts in Tables 11 and 12 it is annotated, that the presentation in the “neutral” Haworth’s projection under the issues given is too crowded to be easily read. The alternative Mills depiction also does not allow clear presentations when structures are involved which contain bridged systems. Therefore, the pyranoid structures are shown in 1°C<sub>4</sub> conformation with the side chain at C-5 in equatorial orientation. This may be justified by the fact that this latter conformation had been found to predominate in sulfoxides obtained from structures of type 117 [79b].

6.2 Reactions of Educts Containing Nitrogen as Ring Member

Similar reactions to those performed with hydroxylated thiepanes [79] (depicted in Table 11, entries 9–11), have also been carried out with polyhydroxylated azepanes of C<sub>2</sub> symmetry [81] (entries 1–4, Table 12). The results obtained either under conditions of a Mitsunobu reaction (entries 2 and 4) or of mesylation (entries 1 and 3) are essentially the same as described above. Under the latter conditions, the intermediate [rN/C-5/C-6]-aziridinium ion is opened, at C-6, by chloride liberated during the mesylation step. The reaction shown in entry 4 again consists of diol monoactivation followed by intramolecular substitution by the trans-located, free OH-group.

In entries 5–11 results from attempted nucleophilic displacements at C-2 and C-6 with educts from a series of N-protected 2,5-dideoxy-2,5-iminohexitols are depicted. The methods used were Mitsunobu reaction (entries 6, 7 and 9 [81b, c]), sulfonate/nucleophile tandem (entries 5 and 8 [81b,c] as well as 11 [82]) and DAST reaction (entry 10 [83]). As can be seen, in most cases reactions at C-2 involve rN participation (AS or MS-type). Concerning the mechanism for substitution at C-6, the AS-type became evident only by isolation of the ring-expanded MS product 125 (entry 8), which is formed via the same intermediate aziridinium ion. To explain the rN participation (MS-mode) in the reaction shown in entry 11, conformational change had to be anticipated [82]. Of further interest to note is that rN participation in N-benzyl-protected educt 123 in the course of a Mitsunobu reaction (entry 6) could be avoided by changing the N-protection to benzylxycarbonyl (cbz in 124, entry 7), whereas in the DAST reaction of benzyl- as well as cbz-protected educt 126 containing an equatorial OH-group at C-4, only the AS-type of reaction was observed (entry 12 [84]). In this contribution, participation of the cbz protecting group was thought to be responsible for the observed substitution with retention of configuration. By using the triflate/TASF tandem, only elimination, but in both directions, was observed [84].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product(s) 1" /></td>
<td>MsCl, TEA, CH₂Cl₂, 0 °C</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>81a 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product(s) 2" /></td>
<td>BzOH/TPP/DEAD, THF, 0 °C</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>81a 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product(s) 3" /></td>
<td>MsCl, TEA, CH₂Cl₂, 0 °C</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>81a 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product(s) 4" /></td>
<td>BzOH/TPP/DEAD, THF, 0 °C</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>81a 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Educt 5" /></td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Product(s) 5" /></td>
<td>1. CsOAc, DMF, 40 °C–50 °C 2. K₂CO₃, MeOH</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>81b 81c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 12 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>(29%) (64%)</td>
<td>1. BzOH/TPP/DEAD THF, 0 °C 2. K₂CO₃, MeOH</td>
<td>93 81b 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /> (91%)</td>
<td>BzOH/TPP/DEAD THF 0 °C</td>
<td>91 81b 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Image" /> (18%)</td>
<td>1. CsOAc, DMF 40 °C–50 °C 2. K₂CO₃, MeOH</td>
<td>71 81b 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Image" /> (70%)</td>
<td>1. BzOH/TPP/DEAD THF, 0 °C 2. K₂CO₃, MeOH</td>
<td>88 81b 81c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image9.png" alt="Image" /> (53%)</td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂/pyridine 0 °C→rt, 48 h</td>
<td>53 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Educt 1](image1) | ![Product 1](image2) | 1. MsCl, TEA, CH₂Cl₂  
20 °C, 4 h  
2. LiN₃, DMF  
60 °C, 1 h | 72 | 82 |
| ![Educt 2](image3) | ![Product 2](image4) | DAST, CH₂Cl₂ | 66 | 84 |
| ![Educt 3](image5) | ![Product 3](image6) | DAST, CH₂Cl₂  
→ reflux, 2 h | 68 | 85a |
| ![Educt 4](image7) | ![Product 4](image8) | DAST, CH₂Cl₂  
0 °C, 1 h | 52 | 85b |
Of special interest are the results obtained from DAST reactions of castanospermine derivatives 128 and 131, respectively (entries 13 and 14 [85]). In the first case [85a], the usual mechanistic principles AS[2,rN] (to form 129) and MS[2,rN] (to yield ring-contracted product 130) were operative [Note: Here the carbohydrate-like numbering is applied instead of the one that generally exists for indolizine derivatives, see structure 131]. In entry 14, the result [85b] from attempted introduction of fluorine at C-4 of the piperidine ring (C-8 in the indolizine numbering) is shown. As illustrated in detail in Scheme 20, by using the more distinct Mill’s depiction, formation of aziridinium ion 132 (with inversion of configuration at C-4) initially occurs. This is opened at C-5 under inversion of configuration according to the ISC path, by participation of the benzoyl group from C-6 (C-1 in the indolizine nomenclature), giving the tricyclic acyloxonium ion 133; the hydrolysis (Hy) of the latter leads to the final product 134. The net result of the transformation (131 into 134) is piperidine–pyrrolidine interconversion with inversion of configuration at C-4 and C-5 (C-8 and 8a in indolizine numbering) [85b].

7 Reactions of Educts Stemming from Sugar Derivatives Other Than Aldo(Pyrano/Furano)ses

Various educts which do not contain the basic structure of an aldose (as, e.g., 1,5-anhydroalditols) have, to some extent, already been treated together with their parent compounds. Herein, the reactivity pattern of two further groups of educts, the 2-triflates of aldonolactones in solvolysis reactions, and the carbonyl-containing aldose derivatives on treatment with DAST, will be discussed separately.
7.1
Reactions of 2-Triflates of Aldono-1,4- and -1,5-lactones

Over the last ten years, the ring-contraction MS[2,rO]-type of side reaction, originally observed with educts containing an equatorially oriented LG at C-2 in pyranosides (see Sect. 4.2 and especially 4.2.1), in its application in the field of aldono-1,5- and, in particular, -1,4-lactones, has been brought to synthetic importance by the studies of Fleet and his group. As the main part of this work was recently presented in a comprehensive way [86a], a few entries only are given in Table 13 to illustrate the pattern of the possible transformations (and to admit our mechanistic interpretations, since – in the original work – participation of the lactone-ring oxygen was not brought into discussion).

In entries 1–3 characteristic reactions of 3,4-O-isopropylidene-\( \text{\textalpha\textprime}\)-altrono-1,5-lactone (135) and the 2-triflate of the corresponding cyclohexylidene derivative 137, respectively, are shown [86]. When Mitsunobu conditions to form a cyclic ether from a diol, were applied to 135, the 2,6-anhydro compound 136 was formed as expected (entry 1; by activation at C-6 and IS reaction of unprotected OH-2, of course without any configurational change). When starting from triflate 137 (entries 2 and 3), according to our mechanistic view, participation of the lactone-ring oxygen comes into play. This results in formation of the intermediate oxiranium ion 141. The latter is opened either, by methanol, at C-1 (to give MS[2,rO]-product 138 with inverted configuration at C-2) or, by OH-6, at the same position (to produce MIS[2,rO/O-6] product 139, also of \( \text{\textalpha\textprime} \)-allo configuration) and alternatively at C-2 (under overall retention of configuration to generate the AIS[2,rO/O-6]-product 2,6-anhydro-\( \text{\textalpha\textprime}\)-allo-1,5-lactone 140). [For the formation of 140 originally [86b] base-catalysed epimerisation at C-2 of triflate 137 was anticipated.]

A fascinating scenario was opened when Fleet started to explore the reactions of 2-triflates of hexono-1,4-lactones (entries 4–8 [86]). Here, first of all, the IS[2,O-6] path, as observed with educt 142 of the \( \text{\textalpha}\)-gluco configuration, is presented. The direct product of intramolecular substitution with inversion of configuration at C-2, 2,6-anhydro-\( \text{\textalpha}\)-mannono-1,4-lactone 143, was isolated from reaction in aprotic media only (entry 4) as its lactone ring, in the presence of methanol (entry 5), was subject to transesterification (TE, to yield 144). (An inverted sequence of reaction, namely transesterification to form 145 followed by intramolecular substitution, was originally proposed.)

When OH-6 is protected (as in educt 146, entry 6), a new, exciting type of MS[2,rO] reaction, unprecedented in the furanose series, appears: Contraction of the five-membered ring, with inversion of configuration at C-2, to form the
oxetane derivative 147. Furthermore, in acidic medium (entry 7), besides participation of O-6 (IS[2,0-6] + TE) to give 144, attack of O-5 (out of the benzyl ether protection) also occurs. [The dependence of the product ratio in this reaction was studied in detail by using methanol and/or tetrahydrofuran as solvent(s) and HCl as well as camphorsulfonic acid (CSA) as proton source.] Formation of product 148 can be envisaged to happen by rO participation via oxonium ion 149, which, by reaction with methanol, is subject to cleavage of the benzyl group from O-5 as well as transesterification (TE).

In the case of the d-allono-1,4-lactone derivative 150, only the (IS[2,0-5] + TE) route (giving 152, entry 8) and not the corresponding sequence involving O-6 was found to be operative. Interestingly, for the ring-contracted product 151, without giving any reasons, d-allo configuration (151a) was reported. [According to our mechanistic understanding, it is the product of a MS[2,rO] reaction, which includes inversion of configuration at C-2, and should therefore be of the d-altro structure 151b. Is epimerisation involved?]

When educt 150 is kept in DMF or methanol (the latter containing 1% HCl), it gives an SN2 reaction, either with the solvent or chloride, with formation of a 2-O-formyl- and 2-chloro-2-deoxy-d-altrose derivative, respectively.

These types of reactions of 2-triflates of aldono-1,4- and -1,5-lactones, as elaborated by Fleet and co-workers, have been used extensively in the synthesis of different classes of natural products such as oxetanocin nucleosides [87] and C-glycofuranosides [88].

7.2 Reactions of Carbonyl Groups in Dialdoses and Aldosuloses with DAST

The reaction of carbonyl groups with excess DAST under formation of geminal difluorides (Scheme 21) resembles the transformation of alcohols into fluoroalkanes by the DAST route (see Scheme 6). Inasmuch as similar side reactions have also been observed in both cases, this special section is included here. As will be seen, many questions are still left unanswered.

In Table 14, the results as obtained by Castillon (entries 1 – 9 [89]) and by Walker (entry 10 [73]) are depicted. Geminal difluorination was observed in entries
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Product 1" /></td>
<td>TPP/ DEAD THF rt, 1 h</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>86a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Product 2" /></td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH rt, 10 min</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>86a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Product 3" /></td>
<td>NaOAc, DMF rt, 3 h</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>86a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) pyridine/acetone, rt, 8 h (88%), NaOAc, DMF, rt, 12 h (64%), c) DMF, rt, 24 h (85%)</td>
<td>IS₂(2-O-6) (64-88%)</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) pyridine/MeOH, rt, 24 h (65%), b) CSA, THF/MeOH, rt, 6 h (90%)</td>
<td>IS₂(2-O-5) + TE (65 or 90%)</td>
<td>144</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 10 min</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCl, MeOH, rt, 12 h</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IS₂(2-O-6) (64-88%)</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IS₂(2-O-5) + TE (65 or 90%)</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 10 min</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>HCl, MeOH, rt, 12 h</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
<td>K₂CO₃, MeOH, rt, 15 h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Product(s) 1" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂, rt, 24 h</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>89a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt 2" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Product(s) 2" /></td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 10 h</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>89a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Product(s) 3" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH₂Cl₂ reflux, 7 h</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>89a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt 4" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Product(s) 4" /></td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 2 h</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>89a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Educt 5" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Product(s) 5" /></td>
<td>DAST, benzene reflux, 10 h</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>89a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Ref.</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>DAST, CH$_2$Cl$_2$, rt, 6 h</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image 64x142 to 385x611" /></td>
<td>89b</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>DAST, CH$_2$Cl$_2$, rt, 24 h</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image 64x142 to 385x611" /></td>
<td>89b</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>DAST, CH$_2$Cl$_2$, rt, 8 h</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image 64x142 to 385x611" /></td>
<td>89a</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>DAST, CH$_2$Cl$_2$, rt, 15 min</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image 64x142 to 385x611" /></td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14 (continued)
When looking for structural features common to the respective educts, only “a rigid system containing a trans-acetal protection” can be found (which is in good agreement with the reduced inclination of such educts to give side reactions, see Sect. 4). Furthermore, conflicting characteristics predominate:

1. The alkoxy shift observed in the reaction of 154 (to form product 155) has no parallel in the reaction of educt 156.
2. The fragmentation found to occur with 3-uloses 157 and 159 (to form product 158) comes as some surprise, as, in the hexopyranose series, educts of gluco configuration were subject to ring contraction MS[3,C-5] rather than fragmentation F[3,C-1] (see Table 6, entries 2 and 3, where with the β-anomer, under soloolytic conditions, fragmentation was observed only).
3. The 1,2-aglycon shifts reported for reactions of 2-uloses 161 and 163/165 (to form products 162 and 164, respectively) are in striking contrast to the results obtained with educts containing an unprotected alcohol instead of a carbonyl group (Sect. 4.2.1, Table 5, entries 12–14). An inspection of their $^{19}$F NMR data revealed [45] that they might also be products of ring contraction; their possible structures are depicted in 162b and 164b. [It should be mentioned that thus far no pure, defined product has been crystallised or separated out of the mixture of diastereomers formed in these reactions (e.g. 162a or b).]

The 1,5-aglycon shift observed with pentodialdofuranoside 166, to yield “glycos-1,5-diyldifluoride” 167 (entry 10 [73]), is in complete agreement with the findings made with the corresponding 5-O-protected furanoside (Table 9, entry 11).

8 Miscellaneous Reactions Related to the Topic

Within this section (including Table 15) a rough survey of transformations which show some relation to those described in previous sections is given.

First of all, the pioneering work of Lemieux and Fraser-Reid [90] has to be mentioned, who, as early as 1963, in their investigation of the brominolysis of
Rearrangements in the Course of Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

2-deoxy-2-iodoaldosides, had described many of the side reactions discussed in this compilation (e.g., aglycon migration \( \text{MS}[2,\text{NG}-1] \), ring contraction \( \text{MS}[2,\text{rO}] \), anhydro ring formation \( \text{IS}[2,\text{O-3}] \) and \( \text{IS}[3,\text{O-6}] \) as well as the combination of the latter two steps). Within recent years, the chemistry of 2-deoxy-2-halo sugars again was subject to studies in the group of Spilling [91]. These workers elucidated the dependence (on the nature of the protecting groups present as well as reaction conditions) of the ratio 1,2-anhydro ring formation \( \text{IS}[2, \text{NG}-1] \) vs. ring contraction \( \text{MS}[2,\text{rO}] \) (followed by elimination). The \( \text{MS}[3,\text{C-5}] \) ring-contracting mode (followed by \( \text{E1cB} \)) was found by Magnusson [92] to occur when 4-\( \text{O} \)-unprotected 2,3-anhydrohexo- and -pentopyranosides were treated with LiBr in the presence of tetramethylurea (TMU). The mechanism was deduced as a sequence of steps comprising trans-diaxial epoxide opening by bromide, conformational inversion, attack of C-5 at C-3 (according to Scheme 12, route g) followed by elimination; an example is shown in entry 1. Bols and Thomsen [93] (entry 3) have recently disclosed a very interesting new type of rearrangement with carbohydrate-derived educts. Although base treatment of 1,6-anhydro-2,3,4-tri-\( \text{O} \)-tosyl-\( \beta \)-d-glucopyranose (168) is known to produce epoxide 169 in high yield [94] (entry 2), reaction of 168 with methoxide in chloroform produced mainly ring-contracted product 170 (entry 3). As mechanism, a tandem elimination/Favorskii rearrangement was anticipated. Divergent results were reported [95] from DAST reaction of 1,6-anhydrohex-2-enopyranose 171 under different conditions. Whereas in \( \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 \) smooth introduction of fluorine, at C-4, under inversion of configuration occurred at room temperature, ring contraction together with an allylic rearrangement, leading to 2,5-anhydrohex-3-enoseptanosyl fluorides 172, took place merely by changing the reaction temperature to −80 °C (entry 4). In DMF, at −50 °C, a hetero-Cope rearrangement, starting from the isolable 4-\( \text{O} \)-formyl derivative of educt 171 (which was generated by reaction with the solvent), led to the corresponding hex-3-enopyranose 173 (entry 5).

Furthermore, some transformations involving special LGs and unusual participation of certain NGs should be mentioned. There is, firstly, the (\( \text{MS}[3,\text{C-5}] + \text{HAF} \)) sequence observed with 2\( \text{N},3\text{O} \)-benzene-1,2-disulfonyl-protected glucosaminide 174 (entry 6 [96]). Secondly, an unusual sequence of an O-4/S-6-benzoyl and O-3/O-4-TBDPS migration followed by the \( \text{IS}[2,\text{O-3}] \) path. This was observed when educt 175 was treated with NaOMe and manno-epoxides 176 were isolated (entry 7 [97]) instead of the “planned” \( \text{IS}[2,\text{S-6}] \) product 177.

In contrast to this, an intramolecular substitution according to \( \text{IS}[3,\text{S-6}] \) was reported from the NaHS treatment of the 3,6-dimesylate 178 of a 2,5-anhydrohexose (entry 8 [98]). Interestingly, when trying to invert the configuration at C-4 (via the triflate 179), an unexpected participation of an oxygen atom from
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>LiBr, TMU/toluene reflux, 10 min</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>92a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>TBAOH MeO(CH$_2$)$_2$OH/benzene rt, 10 min</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>NaOMe, MeOH/CHCl$_3$ rt, 30 min</td>
<td>&gt;44</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>DAST, CH$_2$Cl$_2$ –80 °C, 10 min</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image9.png" alt="Educt" /></td>
<td><img src="image10.png" alt="Product(s)" /></td>
<td>DAST, DMF –50 °C, 20 min</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educt</th>
<th>Product(s)</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Σ (%)</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image 174" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image 176" /></td>
<td>NaOMe, MeOH 50 °C, 36 h</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image 175" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image 176" /></td>
<td>NaOMe, MeOH rt, 21 h; reflux, 30 min</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Image 178" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Image 179" /></td>
<td>NaHS, DMF 80 °C, 40 h</td>
<td>not given</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Image 179" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Image 180" /></td>
<td>LiOBz, DMF reflux, 24 h</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Educt</td>
<td>Product(s)</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Σ (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Educt 10" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Product(s) 10" /></td>
<td>TBAI</td>
<td>not given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Educt 11" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Product(s) 11" /></td>
<td>Na/NH₃, THF -50 °C, 1 h</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Educt 12" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Product(s) 12" /></td>
<td>LiBE₃H, dioxane</td>
<td>&gt;40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Educt 13" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Product(s) 13" /></td>
<td>pyridine/MeOH rt</td>
<td>not given</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the acetal protecting group at C-1, to form the tricyclic structures 180, was observed (entry 9 [98]).

Another surprising result, caused by an unusual kind of NG participation, was found [99] in the course of studies towards the chemical modification of an anthracycline antibiotic. As shown in entry 10, triflate 181, on treatment with TBABr, underwent a hitherto unique rearrangement to form compound 182. The mechanistic explanation for this was stated to consist of E[4,H-5] followed by opening of the pyranoid enol-acetal system thus formed with simultaneous ring closure, between C-1 and the carbonyl oxygen of the N-protecting TFA group. The ring-contracting type of side reactions under involvement of ring carbon atoms also became evident when hydride was used as nucleophile (MS[2,C-4] and MS[3,C-5] in entries 11 [100] and 12 [101], respectively). Finally, mention is made of another interesting kind of rearrangement we have observed [102] with 1,2-O-isopropylidene-5-O-triflyl-α-D-glucofuranurono-6,3-lactone 183 (and other derivatives activated at C-5, including those of L-ido configuration). On storing 183 in pyridine that contained water or methanol (entry 13), formation of 5-deoxy-3-ulose derivative 184 was observed, albeit in low yield. The mechanism obviously consists of a two-step hydride shift (from C-4 to C-5 followed by that from C-3 to C-4). Both the 4-C-methylglucuronic acid derivative 185 and the carbocyclic educt 186 did not give this rearrangement.

\[ \text{180} \]
\[ \text{181} \]
\[ \text{182} \]

9
Concluding Remarks

Although we have performed careful and extensive searches of the available literature, it is possible that some essential contributions have been overlooked or were not cited in their full meaning. For this we apologise. Furthermore, we once again refer to a statement made in the introductory section, that “the significance of each single reaction cited finds its measure in the given total yield of isolated products”. For the further development of the present understanding of the types of reactions involved, it will be essential (besides having to clarify certain contradictory results) to design experiments which will answer the more far-reaching questions still left unanswered.

Acknowledgements. Financial support by the Fonds zur Förderung der wissenschaftlichen Forschung, Vienna (P-11021 OECH) is gratefully acknowledged.
10

References

1. For more general information on all types of reactions involved see any textbook of organic chemistry, e.g., March J (1992) Advanced organic chemistry, 4th edn. Wiley, New York (chaps 5, 10, 17 and 18)
16. Compare the discussion on “Migratory Aptitude” in ref 1, p 1058
17. Ref 4, p 48
18. (a) Hase S, Matsushima Y (1972) J Biochem 72:1117; (b) Hase S, Tsuji Y, Matsushima Y (1972) J Biochem 72:1549; (c) Ref 4, p 44
40. Ng Ying Kin NMK, Williams JM, Horsington A (1971) J Chem Soc (C) 1578
63. Ref 4, p 50
72. Ref 4, p 57
82. Schumacher-Wandersleb MHMG, Petersen S, Peter MG (1994) Liebig's Ann Chem 555
90. (a) Lemieux RU, Fraser-Reid B (1963) Can J Chem 42:539; (b) Lemieux RU, Fraser-Reid B (1963) Can J Chem 42:547
Hexopyranoid glycosides and glycosyl esters that have an exocyclic double bond at C-5 (with or without an O-linked substituent at C-6) can be converted directly, efficiently and under mild conditions to cyclohexanone derivatives of the inosose or deoxyinosose categories. Usually mercury(II) salts are used to promote the process, but Pd(II) compounds can also be employed. Carbon-6 of the starting materials bonds to C-1 of aldehydic metal-containing intermediates, the initial anomeric centres become secondary alcohols, and the aglycone of the starting materials are lost during the reaction. The C-5 centre becomes a carbonyl group. Otherwise, titanium, aluminium or Grignard compounds can be used to promote the conversions but, very significantly, in these instances the products retain the C-1 substituents of the starting materials. Also, when triisobutylaluminium is used, the products isolated are the alcohols derived by reduction of the carbonyl groups of the initially formed cyclohexanones. The reactions have been used in the synthesis of a wide range of inositols, their derivatives, and other compounds containing functionalized cyclohexane rings.

**Keywords:** Hexopyranoid-5-enes, Carbasugars, Inositols, Inososes, Deoxyinosososes, Inosamines, Conduritols

1 Introduction ............................................................. 278

2 Use of 6-Deoxyhex-5-enose Derivatives with Mercury(II) Salts .... 279
   2.1 General .............................................................. 279
   2.2 Stereochemistry and Mechanism .................................. 280
   2.3 Applications ...................................................... 283

3 Use of 6-Deoxyhex-5-enose Derivatives with Palladium Salts ...... 286

4 Use of 6-Substituted Hex-5-enose Derivatives .......................... 286

5 Use of 6-Deoxy- and 6-Substituted Hex-5-enose Derivatives with Titanium, Aluminium and Grignard Reagents ................... 288

6 References .............................................................. 290
1
Introduction

It was during the search for a new and direct route from readily available monosaccharide derivatives to functionalized cyclopentanes which would serve as prostaglandin synthesis precursors that the reaction discussed in this chapter, and shown in outline in Scheme 1, was first encountered [1]. From the 6-deoxyhex-5-enoside derivative 1 (Scheme 2), the methoxymercuration adduct 2 was readily obtained, but attempts to induce the metallated C-6 to displace the tosyloxy leaving group from C-2 and give the 2-oxa-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane derivative 3 were unsuccessful. Recognition that hydroxymercuration of the same alkene would give the hemiacetal 4, which would ring open and lose methanol as illustrated to give the acyclic 5 in which C-6 would now be doubly activated as a nucleophile by the bonded metal atom and the carbonyl group at C-5, led to compound 1 being heated in aqueous acetone with mercury(II) chloride. The cyclopentane derivative 6 was not formed; instead, the cyclohexanone 7 crystallized in high yield when the solution cooled down to room temperature [1]. Rather, therefore, than C-6 of the osulose 5 bonding to the poorly electrophilic C-2 [2], it had taken part in an aldol-like reaction with the released C-1 aldehydic group. The process is therefore very similar to the ring closure 8 → 9 which, under the influence of inositol cyclase, is the key step in the biosynthetic conversion of D-glucose 6-phosphate into myo-inositol 1-phosphate (Scheme 3a) [3]. Likewise, there is a strong resemblance to the ring-closure reaction by which the unstable hemiacetal 10 is converted to the hydroxycyclohexanone 12 via enolate 11 during the bioconversion of 3-deoxy-D-arabino-heptulosonic acid 7-phosphate to shikimic acid and the benzenoid rings of the aromatic amino acids (Scheme 3b) [4].
When it was found that 10 rearranges spontaneously in solution to 12 the requirement for the dehydroquinate synthase in the cyclization step was questioned [5], but then it was discovered that a small proportion of the epimer at the tertiary centre of 12 was also produced in the non-catalyzed reaction while the enzyme-catalyzed process was stereospecific [6]. It is clear therefore that the intermediate 11 is retained in the active site of the enzyme until cyclization is complete.

In the 20 years since its discovery the reaction under consideration here has often been used in its original form; however, it has been modified and extended in several important ways. Consequently, 5,6-unsaturated hexopyranosyl compounds are well-recognized starting materials for the synthesis of not just carbocyclic analogues of pyranoid sugars the – carba-sugars – but inositols and related compounds such as inososes (pentahydroxycyclohexanones), inosamines (pentahydroxycyclohexylamines) and conduritols (tetrahydroxycyclohexenes). Beyond that, several natural products and pharmaceutically significant compounds with oxygenated cyclohexane components in their structures have been made by the reaction, the products being enantiomerically pure in all cases. This survey covers the basic features of the original reaction, developments of it (notably those utilizing 6-substituted 5-enose compounds and those that allow retention of the aglycone of the starting material) and applications in synthesis. A detailed review of the earlier parts of the story has been published [7].

2
Use of 6-Deoxyhex-5-enose Derivatives with Mercury(II) Salts

2.1
General

That mercury-containing intermediates such as 5 are involved in the reaction has been established by their isolation [8] and their conversion to cyclohexanones by treatment with sulfide [8a] or thiourea [8b]. Otherwise, acid-catalyzed
hydrolysis of products of methoxymercuration such as 2 gives intermediates that react further to afford the hydroxycyclohexanones [9]. From the starting alkenes no such carbocyclic products are formed by acid hydrolysis, rather 6-deoxyhexos-5-uloses are obtained, establishing that the mercury salt is required for the carbocyclization to occur. Because the starting alkenes and conceivably the mercury-containing intermediates are subject to acid hydrolysis to give undesired hexos-5-ulose products [10], attention was given to minimizing the acidity of the reaction media. Consequently, mercury(II) acetate was found to improve the yield in the reaction of tetra-O-benzoyl-6-deoxy-β-D-xyl-hex-5-enose affording 93% of the tri-O-benzoyl analogue of compound 7, whereas 55% was reported when the chloride was used [8a].

A very useful development came with the recognition that the reaction can proceed efficiently with catalytic proportions of mercury(II) salts even at room temperature; the activity of the salts decreasing in the order trifluoroacetate, chloride and acetate, oxide [11], the trifluoroacetate impressively being efficient at 1 mol% [12].

In the context of the severity of the reaction conditions it has to be recognized that the ketonic products commonly have good leaving groups at C-3 (carbohydrate numbering) and may be isolated as derived enones, e.g. 13 (see Table 1, entry 4), which was formed in 80% yield from an α-D-ribo-hex-5-enosi-de [13]. This isomer is particularly subject to β-elimination because of the axial nature of both H-4 and the benzoyloxy group at C-3 (carbohydrate numbering), and conditions much milder than those employed in the initial work (HgSO₄, H₂SO₄, 80°C) have to be used if elimination is to be avoided. Otherwise, the alternative type of enone (e.g. 14) can be readily made from the normal hydroxyketone products, e.g. 7, following methanesulfonylation [7, 14] or acetylation [7, 15] of the hydroxy groups.

2.2 Stereochemistry and Mechanism

A significant feature of the reaction outlined in Scheme 1 (R, R² = alkyl, acyl; R³ = H, OR; R⁴ = H) is the appreciable stereoselectivity shown at the new chiral centre, there normally being strong bias in favour of diastereomers with the new hydroxyl group trans-related to the substituent at C-3, compound 7 for example being obtainable in 89% yield [8a]. The mercury(II)-based reaction, however, despite claims to the contrary [16], is not a stereospecific process.

The main evidence (apart from the characterization of the mercuriated intermediates) from which proposed mechanisms for the ring closure have been developed is the impact of the orientation of the substituent at C-3 of the starting materials on the stereochemical outcomes. Table 1 indicates that the
reaction can be very selective in favour of the \( \alpha \)-products formed not just from \( \delta \)-glucose-derived starting materials (entry 1) but also from analogous \( \delta \)-mannose- and \( \delta \)-galactose-based alkenes (entries 2 and 3). Inversion of configuration at C-2 or C-4, therefore, does not affect the stereochemical outcomes. When, however, the starting alkenes have the inverted stereochemistry at C-3 the consequences are dramatically different, and \( \beta \)-alcohols are the main products (Table 1, entries 4 and 5), and can be formed with high stereoselectivity.

Early attempts to rationalize the stereochemistry of the reaction correlated the configurations of the products with the conformations of the starting al-
kenes [13], but when the importance of the configuration of the substituent at C-3 was recognized two hypotheses invoking intramolecular coordination of the mercury atom were developed. One was based on the concept of coordination of delocalized mercury enolates with O-1 of the aldehydic group in either of two rotamer states (Scheme 4) [7, 8b, 17]. Thus, intermediate 5 (Scheme 2) leads to the enolates 5a and 5a’ and then to the transition states 5b and 5b’ of which the chair-like former is favoured relative to the latter. In consequence, the isomer 7a is the major product of ring closure. Clearly, a large axial substituent at C-3 would destabilize 5b and β-products would be relatively favoured. In the other proposed coordination-dependent path the direction of attack at C-1 by C-6 is controlled by binding of the mercury atoms to the electronegative atoms at C-3 and products with the C-1 and C-3 substituents trans-related are formed [18].

It is difficult to choose between these two possibilities; however, ring closures of the epimeric 5-enes 15 and 16 (Scheme 5), which have both a C-methyl and an acetoxy substituent at C-3 (Table 1, entries 6 and 7) [19], suggest strongly that, at least in these cases, O-3 coordination is the determining factor. Since single products are obtained in good yields in both examples, each having the new hydroxyl group trans to the acetoxy groups at C-3, a mechanism involving transition states like those illustrated in Scheme 5 has to be favoured. In the case of the 2,3-dideoxy alkene in entry 8 of Table 1, marked loss of stereoselectivity is
shown [18], and from methyl 4-\textit{O}-benzyl-3,6-dideoxy-2-\textit{O}-methyl-\textit{d}-\textit{ribo}-hexopyranoside, a further 3-deoxy substrate, again both the \(\alpha\)- and \(\beta\)-hydroxycyclohexanones are formed in significant proportions [20].

Such features as reaction conditions, reagent proportions and the \(O\)-substituents on the 5-enes can affect the \(\alpha,\beta\) ratios of the products [8b], but they usually do so to a lesser extent than does the configuration at C-3. There, however, appears to be one aspect of the \(O\)-substituents that has a dramatic influence on product formation: the presence of silyl ethers that can result in inverted product ratios (see Sect. 4).

One study committed to investigating the stereochemical details of the reaction by the use of the specifically deuterated alkene 17 showed that the stereochemical integrity of the C-6 methylene group is lost during the reaction (Scheme 6), and this has been taken, along with the absence of exchange of the isotope with the solvent and with results of molecular orbital calculations, as evidence that C-6 free radicals are the intermediates involved in the ring-closure step of the process [8c]. If this were the case, mercury(II), however, is unlikely to be recoverable from the ring-closure step as is required by its ability to function in catalytic proportions. To account otherwise for the above findings would seem to require that C-5–C-6 bond rotation can occur at some stages in the process – perhaps within intermediate/transition states analogous to 5a and 5b.

\[ 
\begin{align*}
\text{Scheme 6} & \\
\text{17} & \xrightarrow{\text{HgCl}_2, \text{H}_2\text{O}} \\
& \\
\end{align*}
\]

2.3 Applications

Of the several reactions available for making cyclohexane derivatives from carbohydrates the present is amongst the most useful. It has been applied in many instances – mainly to the preparation of sugars with a methylene group in place of the ring oxygen atom (carbasugars) and of inositols and inositol derivatives. On occasion, however, it has been used in syntheses related to natural compounds outside these areas [7].

Direct application of the reaction gives 2-deoxyinosose derivatives (e.g. 7) which can be applied in many ways to afford natural products or analogues required for bioorganic purposes – particularly to act as specific enzyme inhibitors and bioactive inositol phosphates. From compounds like 7, enones such as 13 or 14 are readily obtainable, and by reduction of the carbonyl groups and hydroxylation of the double bonds, derivatives of the parent inositols can be made. An interesting example uses lactose as starting material, and via a derivative having the 6-deoxy-5-ene function in the glucose moiety, a galactosylated cyclohexenone is made and hence derivatives of the naturally occurring iso-
meric $\beta$-d-galactosyl-\textit{myo}-inositols 18 and 19 [21]. Related work can allow access to partially substituted inositols such as 2,3,6-tri-O-benzyl-d-\textit{myo}-inositol from which important inositol phosphates – especially the secondary messenger of calcium mobilization d-\textit{myo}-inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (20) – can be made [22].

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\includegraphics{image1}};
\node at (2,0) {\includegraphics{image2}};
\node at (4,0) {\includegraphics{image3}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

A good example of the application of the reaction to the preparation of carbasugars that have a methylene group in place of the ring oxygen atom [23] is in the synthesis of the carbasugar nucleotide uridine 5'-\textit{(carba-$\alpha$-d-galactopyranosyl)} diphosphate (21) which is a competitive inhibitor of a galactosyl transferase. The carbocyclic component was made from methyl $\alpha$-d-galactopyranoside via the normal deoxyinosose, the carbonyl group of which was methylenated to give an \textit{exo}-alkene and hence a carba-$\alpha$-d-galactose compound by hydroboration [24]. In an alternative approach to carbasugar-like compounds, the exocyclic carbon atom of the $\beta$-glucosidase inhibitor cyclophellitol (22) was introduced at C-2 of a methyl glucoside derivative prior to making the 5-ene and effecting mercury-induced cyclization [25]. By a similar approach the C-methyl-\textit{myo}-inositol laminitol 23, which is found in algae and has antifungal properties, was made from a 4-C-methylglucoside via the 6-deoxy-5-ene and then the corresponding cyclohexenone derivative [22].

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\includegraphics{image4}};
\node at (2,0) {\includegraphics{image5}};
\node at (4,0) {\includegraphics{image6}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

The ready availability of enones such as 14 from hexose derivatives has led to the production of specific conduritols, e.g. (+)-conduritol C (24) and its enantiomer – ultimately from d-galactose [15].

Perhaps, however, aminocyclitol derivatives are the most important group of compounds to have become accessible by application of the mercury-induced reaction, since they figure prominently in natural products – notably the amino-glycoside antibiotics. Central to many of these are compounds 25 (streptidine) and 26 (2-deoxystreptamine) that occur in glycosylated forms in streptomycin and the neomycins, respectively, and compounds of this type have frequently been made by the mercury-based cyclization procedure. The amino
groups can be introduced by starting with aminodeoxyhex-5-enoses or by aminating cyclohexanones derived from hexoses, or by applying both approaches [7]. Other aminocyclitol compounds to have been made are 27, which was designed as a potential N-acetylhexosaminidase inhibitor [26], 28, an analogue of a key component of the potent insecticidal chitinase inhibitor allosamidin [27], and 29 which was designed as a glycosidase transition state analogue and intended as a hapten for generating catalytic antibodies capable of promoting specific glycosylations [28].

Some natural products outside the carbohydrate field – particularly those with highly hydroxylated cyclohexane ring components – have been subject to synthetic studies which are dependent on the mercury-based rearrangement reaction: the alkaloid (+)-lycoricidine (30) [12] and the cycloheptane-based (+)-calystegine B$_2$ (31) which stimulates growth of nitrogen-fixing Rhizobia [29] are examples, and compound 32 which offers novel access to the anthracycinone components of anthracyclin anti-cancer compounds, has been produced by cycloaddition of a naphthalene-based o-xyylene to a 2,3-unsaturated hex-4-uloside followed by carbocyclization of the product by use of the mercuration procedure [30]. Studies on HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors like compactin have afforded the tetra-carbon-substituted 33 made from a hex-5-enopyranoside with deoxy-branch chains at C-2, C-3 and C-4 [31].
3 
**Use of 6-Deoxyhex-5-enose Derivatives with Palladium Salts**

In 1988 it was first reported that palladium salts can be used to bring about the carbocyclization reaction [32] and, while this has been employed effectively with 5 mol% of palladium chloride to make a cyclohexenone and hence cyclophellitol (22) [14], reports have indicated that it gives poorer yields of carbocyclic products than do mercury(II) salts, and that stereoselectivity is lower [33] or even reversed [34]. However, used catalytically in aqueous dioxane at 60 °C, palladium chloride gives good to excellent yields of \( \alpha \)-products from the 5-enes derived from methyl 2,3,4-tri-\( \text{O} \)-benzyl or -\( \text{O} \)-benzoyl-\( \alpha \)-\( \text{d} \)-glucoside, -galactoside or -mannoside. The sulfuric acid used in earlier work is not required, and therefore the conditions can be extremely mild [35].

Since 1,5-dienes can be cyclized by palladium salts via \( \sigma,\pi \)-complexes [36], it appears probable that similar intermediates are involved in the carbohydrate cyclizations.

4 
**Use of 6-Substituted Hex-5-enose Derivatives**

A very significant development, particularly with respect to the synthesis of the inositols and their biologically important derivatives, came with the finding that the metal-ion-promoted cyclization is very effective with 5-enes that retain an oxygen substituent at C-6. Such compounds are best prepared from the corresponding glycosides that have a formyl-substituted C-5, and the derived enol acetates are the best-known members. Treatment of compound 35, derived from aldehyde 34, with mercury(II) trifluoroacetate in aqueous acetone affords the inosose 36 in 57% yield (together with the epimer at the hydroxy centre in the ratio 6:1), and reduction of the major product with sodium triacetoxyborohydride gives the myo-inositol derivative 37 stereospecifically (Scheme 7) [37]. The clear value of such compounds for the preparation of specific inositol phosphate derivatives was concurrently illustrated by the synthesis of a \( \text{D-myo-inositol} \) 1,3,4,5-tetakisphosphate derivative [38].

![Scheme 7](image-url)
Although the mercury(II) salt method can be used satisfactorily for the cyclization [39], comparative experiments have shown that the palladium-salt-based procedure can be more effective in giving cyclohexanes, although all four products are formed [40]. Thus the latter method converts compound 35 into 36 (49%) together with the other cis-related product (24%) and the trans-isomers (17 and 10%) in 77% overall yield, while mercury trifluoroacetate gives only the cis-products, but in poor yield – at least under the conditions used. The stereochemistry of the alkene in compounds such as 35 does not affect the product ratios. In the case of the L-arabino C-4 epimer of alkene 35 (derived from methyl \(\alpha\)-D-galactopyranoside), the favoured products are the two inososes with the acetoxy groups at the new chiral centre cis to the benzoyloxy group at C-4 of the starting compound, and the hydroxyl groups cis or trans to the acetates. Again use of palladium chloride results in all four products, while mercury(II) trifluoroacetate affords only two; in this case, the yield using the latter reagent is not anomalously low at 75% [40]. From the \(\alpha\)-mannose-derived alkene (epimer of 35 at C-2), the only product formed with either reagent is the analogous epimer of compound 36 [40].

Ketone 36 and its diastereomers are reduced to the corresponding alcohols – in high yield and sometimes with dramatically different and useful selectivities [41]. For example, while tetramethylammonium triacetoxyborohydride gives the same myo-inositol 37 from 36 as does the analogous sodium salt with >99% selectivity, sodium borohydride effects the reduction with similar stereoefficiency, but in the opposite sense, to give the allo-inositol epimer, the products being formed in high yields and retaining their chirality. The method therefore is of considerable value for making many specifically substituted inositol derivatives; a naturally occurring membrane phosphoinositide, for example, was made by reduction of the carbonyl group of a compound closely related to 36 followed by protecting group manipulation and phosphorylation [39a].

Little is known of the reasons behind the stereochemistry observed in the Hg(II)- and PdCl\(_2\)-induced carbocyclizations, but some relevant observations were made during the first study of the cyclization of 6-acetoxy-5-enes [37]. At least from compounds with the \(\alpha\)-xylo configuration (e.g. 35), and in keeping with their 6-deoxy-analogues (Sect. 2.2), the main products have the \(\alpha\) configuration (axial OH) at the new alcohol centre. On the other hand, the acetoxy group has the \(\alpha\) (equatorial) orientation. Furthermore, mercury(II) salts apparently favour the formation of cis-products at the two new chiral centres [40]. When, however, the C-2–C-4 hydroxyl groups carry triethylsilyl substituents (e.g. compound 38) the situation changes and the main product again has the hydroxy group and the acetoxy group cis-related to each other but now both \(\beta\). A striking feature of the reaction is that the product 39 prefers the conformation with the silyloxy groups all axial, so again the new hydroxy and acetoxy groups are axial and equatorial, respectively (Scheme 8) [37]. This observation therefore parallels that noted with a 6-deoxy-2,4-di-O-silylated analogue of compound 38 which anomalously gives 75% yield of the \(\beta\)-alcohol when subjected to the PdCl\(_2\)-catalyzed reaction [35]. It appears therefore that the use of silyl protecting groups in place of alkyl or acyl substituents
may afford a means of altering the stereochemistry of the carbocyclization processes.¹

An extension of the reaction of 6-acetoxy-5-enes leads to the use of alkenes with different substituents at C-6, a notable example being the extended chain sugar derivative 40 made from the d-galactose-based C-4 epimer of aldehyde 34 by an aryllithium addition reaction. Treatment with mercury(II) chloride in aqueous acetonitrile gives the expected alcohols in 75% yield, and these on acetylation then afford the enone 41 (70%) of relevance to the synthesis of pancreastatin (42) which shows promising anti-cancer properties [42]. A very similar reaction, involving a 6-C-phenyl-5-ene, but one in which the C-1 substituent is not lost, is covered in the following section.

5 Use of 6-Deoxy- and 6-Substituted Hex-5-enose Derivatives with Titanium, Aluminium and Grignard Reagents

Recognition of the vinyl acetal character of hex-5-enopyranosides and of the convertibility of such compounds by reductive rearrangement to carbocyclic products by treatment with triisobutylaluminium led to the modified route to cyclohexanes from 6-deoxyhex-5-enoside derivatives illustrated in Scheme 9 [43]. In this way compound 43 is converted in 79% yield to the deoxyinositol 44, there being two important differences relative to the mercury(II)-promoted ring closure: the anomeric centre substituent is retained, and specific reduction is effected at the carbonyl centre. From the β-anomer of compound

43 the C-1 epimer (carbohydrate numbering) of 44 is obtained in 70% yield together with 10% of the all-equatorial compound and 6% of 44, these minor products showing that the 6-exo-trig ring-closure step and the carbonyl reduction are not altogether specific. The main products derived from the analogous enes made from methyl β-d-galactopyranoside and methyl α-d-mannopyranoside have retained configuration at C-1 and cis-related hydroxy, methoxy groups [43]. Applied in the maltose and isomaltose series the method gives pseudo-disaccharide derivatives 45 and 46 in 54 and 65%, respectively [44].

A further ring-rearrangement reaction, which is intermediate in effect between the mercury(II)- and trisobutylaluminium-promoted methods in that it gives cyclohexanones with retained aglycons, is dependent on the use of the mild Lewis acid isopropyltitanium trichloride. From 5-enoside 43 it gives the ketone derivative 47 (Scheme 10) with retained stereochemistry at the methoxylated carbon atom in near quantitative yield. Similar results are obtained with the analogous 5-enes derived from methyl α-d-galactopyranoside and -mannopyranoside, but mixed products arise from the corresponding β-glycosides [45].

---


---

Scheme 9

Scheme 10
In agreement with the results obtained with the titanium alkoxide, titanium tetrachloride converts the 6-substituted alkene orthoester 49 into the expected cyclohexanone 48 in 88% yield, and Grignard reagents promote the carbocyclization reaction and then react with the carbonyl functions of the products. In this way compound 49, on treatment with phenylmagnesium bromide, affords the diphenyl product 50 that has both of the phenyl groups equatorial (Scheme 11) [46].

Scheme 11

6 References

20. Blattner R personal communication
The application of the Claisen rearrangement in carbohydrate chemistry has proven a valuable method for the realization of complex synthetic schemes. Apart from some interesting findings of a more principal nature, which will also be highlighted, many of the presented examples have culminated in the synthesis of novel carbohydrate mimetics or important representatives of other classes of natural products. For each case, the respective synthetic context will be given and most of the target structures are shown to give an idea of the variety and complexity of molecular frameworks that are accessible with this reaction. The material is organized into sections with respect to which portion of the Claisen system is of carbohydrate origin: the allylic alcohol moiety, the enol ether functionality, or both. Particular emphasis is placed on the discussion of practical issues such as synthetic accessibility of the respective starting materials, frequently encountered experimental problems, generality of the approach, and potential extension of the synthetic utilization.

**Keywords:** Carbohydrates, Rearrangements, Enol ethers, Ketene acetals, Chiral building blocks

1 **Introduction** .......................................................... 294

2 **Carbohydrate-Derived Allylic Alcohols** ............................................. 296
   2.1 Glycals ........................................................................ 296
   2.2 Other Endocyclic Unsaturated Derivatives ...................................... 304
   2.3 Exocyclic Unsaturated Derivatives ................................................. 307

3 **Carbohydrate-Derived Enol Ethers and Ketene Acetals** .......................... 311
   3.1 Enol Ethers ................................................................... 311
   3.2 Ketene Acetals .................................................................. 313

4 **Skeletal Rearrangements** .............................................................. 320

5 **Perspectives** ......................................................................... 322

6 **References** ............................................................................. 323
Introduction

Within the large and diverse field of synthetic carbohydrate chemistry, the stereocontrolled formation of carbon–carbon bonds represents an important and at times demanding task. This problem has been widely addressed in connection with the total synthesis of natural products and the utilization of sugars as versatile chiral starting materials [1]. In the closer context of carbohydrate research, extensive efforts have been directed towards the synthesis of C-glycosides [2], carbasugars [3], and branched-chain derivatives [4], both as naturally occurring compounds and as potential mimetics for biologically active glycostructures. Substantial difficulties are frequently imposed on such endeavors by the structural complexity of saccharides with their high density of reactive oxygen functionalities.

The Claisen rearrangement [5], the intramolecular reaction of allyl enol ethers 1 to γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl compounds 3, has become a valuable tool for organic synthesis [6]. The sigmatropic process allows a significant alteration of the molecular framework within a single step. The concerted mechanism involves a highly organized transition state 2 that often directs the stereochemical course in the reaction of substituted derivatives and enables the simultaneous formation of two asymmetric centers (Scheme 1).

Participation of an oxygen functionality renders the reaction particularly interesting for an application to carbohydrate substrates. Major disadvantages of the original Claisen rearrangement are the very high reaction temperatures and the limited synthetic access to enol ethers as starting materials. A number of modifications have been introduced to overcome these problems. Those that will also be encountered in many of the examples presented later in this chapter are briefly outlined in the following. A procedure developed by Eschenmoser et al. [7] starts from an allylic alcohol 4 and generates first a mixed amide acetal 5a to provide after alcohol elimination the ketene N,O-acetal 6a which can undergo sigmatropic rearrangement to the unsaturated amide 7a (Scheme 2). The method introduced by Johnson et al. [8] utilizes orthoesters 5b for the forma-

Scheme 1. The Claisen rearrangement [5, 6]

Scheme 2. The Eschenmoser–Claisen and Johnson–Claisen rearrangements [7, 8]
tion of ketene acetals 6b and rearrangement of the latter to unsaturated esters 7b in a very similar fashion.

Both processes provide an experimentally simple means for the introduction of a C₂ or C₃ fragment. However, they still require reaction temperatures of 140–200 °C and suffer from the restricted availability of orthoesters and amide acetals, respectively. A more general solution is offered by the methodology developed by Ireland et al. [9]. Deprotonation of an allyl ester 8 and immediate O-silylation of the enolate 9 furnishes a silyl ketene acetal 10, which is less prone to undergo unwanted side reactions, as compared to the enolate anion itself, but which still rearranges easily to the silyl ester 11 at temperatures often below 60 °C (Scheme 3).

![Scheme 3. The Ireland–Claisen rearrangement [9]](image)

A major advantage of the Ireland reaction lies in the employment of allyl esters as starting materials which are readily prepared in virtually unlimited structural variety. Moreover, during the enolization step, the choice of reaction conditions permits control over double-bond geometry in the case of substituted substrates (Scheme 4). While under kinetic control formation of the (Z)-eno- late (Z)-14 is generally favored, its isomer (E)-14 can be obtained by the addition of a chelating agent such as HMPA [10].

![Scheme 4. Control of enolate geometry [10]](image)
2
Carbohydrate-Derived Allylic Alcohols

2.1 Glycals

Glycals [11] are by far the most common unsaturated carbohydrate derivatives and have proven valuable starting materials in a large variety of synthetic endeavors. In a program directed towards the stereoselective synthesis of $\alpha$-C-glycopyranosides, Fraser-Reid et al. explored the sigmatropic rearrangement of reactive intermediates derived from 4,6-O-benzylidene-\textit{d}-allal 15 [12]. The study comprised investigation of the original enol ether Claisen rearrangement, as well as several synthetic modifications (Scheme 5). A major problem originated from the general high reactivity of glycals towards nucleophiles leading to allylic substitution. In an attempt to apply the Johnson orthoester procedure, the starting material thus reacted with the catalyst propionic acid in an unwanted fashion to give the unsaturated esters 16 and 17, while no Claisen rearrangement could be observed.

The alternatively explored thermal rearrangement of vinyl ether 18 avoided such side reactions; however, in this case, a high sensitivity towards the reaction temperature became apparent. After no reaction could be achieved at 145°C, an

Scheme 5. The first glycal Claisen rearrangements by Fraser-Reid [12] and Ireland [13]
increase to 210 °C induced ring opening of the primarily formed rearrangement product 19 to give the dienic aldehyde 20. At 185 °C, 19 was finally obtained as the sole product in good yield, but the overall process suffered substantially from the low conversion of only 50% during the formation of enol ether 18 from the allylic alcohol starting material. Eventually, the most satisfying results were reported for the Eschenmoser amide acetal procedure, which afforded the rearranged dimethyl amide 21 in a high yield of 85%.

The same D-allal starting material was also subjected to the silyl ketene acetal rearrangement protocol by Ireland et al. [13]. After several work-up steps, the rearrangement product, methyl ester 22, could be obtained in 60% yield, but the rearrangement was reported to be unusually slow, probably due to steric restrictions of the bicyclic framework. The reaction required prolonged heating at 100 °C to proceed to completion, thus lacking the particular advantages of short rearrangement times and low temperatures normally associated with the Ireland procedure. This method was applied more successfully to less-constrained starting structures (Scheme 6). Both pyranoid and furanoid glycal propionates 23–26, after conversion to the silyl ketene acetals, rearranged smoothly to the C-glycosidic acids 27–30, with particularly fast reaction rates being observed for the furanoid series \( t_{1/2} = 3 \) min at 35 °C. Significant stereoselectivities were obtained during the formation of the new asymmetric center within the C-glycosidic side chain. The product ratio reached values of around 4:1 and could be reversed by changing the solvent system from pure THF to a THF/HMPA mixture.

As the absolute configurations were not determined, no conclusion could be drawn about the involved transition state until a later study, where, in an elegant series of experiments, the glycal-derived rearrangement products 33, 36, and 39 were transformed to chiral target molecules of known stereochemistry [14]. Correlation with the (–)- and (+)-nonactic acids 34 and 37 and the Prelog-

Scheme 6. Ireland–Claisen rearrangement of pyranoid and furanoid glycals [13]
Djerassi lactone 40, respectively, revealed the absolute configurations formed during Claisen rearrangement. In this way, it could be demonstrated that the transition state in all cases adopts a boatlike conformation as is shown for the (E)-ketene acetal 32 in Scheme 7.

Having thus established the main stereochemical features, the Claisen rearrangement of glycal esters could be further utilized to provide key intermediates for a number of natural product syntheses: Carbohydrates served as starting materials in the total synthesis of the ionophore antibiotics lasalocid A 43 by Ireland et al. [15] and indanomycin 46 by Ley et al. [16] (Scheme 8), as well as the 3-acyl tetrmeric acid antibiotics tirandamycic acid 49 [17] and (+)-streptolic acid 52 [18] (Ireland et al., Scheme 9). Several further examples have been reported in the literature [19–21].

Again, in all studies, rearrangement through a boatlike transition state was observed. This seems remarkable considering the general energetic stabilization of the chair conformation for six-membered cyclic assemblies. An underlying rationale, hinting at the glycal ring oxygen atom as the major directing factor, was later proposed. Its guiding principles, however, are better understood against the background of related studies reported by Curran et al. [22]. The bis(ketene acetal) 54 (Scheme 10), derived from di-O-acetyl-L-arabinal 53, upon heating to 60 °C underwent Claisen rearrangement to provide, after work-up, the unsaturated acid 56 as the sole reaction product. However, the primarily formed
Scheme 8. Glycal Claisen rearrangement products as intermediates for the total synthesis of ionophore antibiotics [15, 16]

Scheme 9. Glycal Claisen rearrangement products as intermediates for the total synthesis of 3-acyltetramic acid antibiotics [17, 18]
silyl derivative 55 still contained an allyl ketene acetal moiety and, by heating the crude reaction mixture to 110 °C, a second sigmatropic rearrangement could be initiated to give bis(silyl ester) 57, isolated as its dimethyl derivative 58.

Kinetic measurements of the reaction rates $k_1$ and $k_2$ for the individual rearrangement steps revealed that the first Claisen rearrangement proceeded 20 times faster than the second one. This unexpected chemoselectivity proved useful for the preparation of key intermediate 59 in the synthesis of pseudomonic acid C 60 (Scheme 11).

Similar selective mono-Claisen rearrangements could be achieved with the ketene acetals derived from glycal di- and triacetates 61–64 (Scheme 12) with the ratios $k_1/k_2$ reaching values of 35–575.

Scheme 10. Chemoselective mono- vs. di-Claisen rearrangement of a glycal bis(ketene acetal) [22]

Scheme 11. Utilization of the mono-Claisen product for the total synthesis of pseudomonic acid C [22]
The main structural difference between the substrates in both rearrangement steps is provided by the ring oxygen atom, which only in the first case substitutes the allylic double bond involved in the sigmatropic rearrangement and might display an accelerating influence. With an exchange of the oxygen atom for a methylene group the sharp distinction between both rearrangements should disappear. This was indeed observed for the reaction of cyclohexenyl derivative 65, which showed reaction rates $k_1$ and $k_2$ of virtually the same value, inevitably leading to a mixture of mono- and di-Claisen products 66 and 67 (Scheme 13). Further evidence for a decisive effect arising from oxygen substitution was provided by direct comparison of the reaction rates of glycal 68a and its carbocyclic counterpart 68b, which showed a difference in the order of one magnitude.

The studies of such closely related structures also ruled out any possible steric effects and the driving influence for reaction rate enhancement has to be seen in the oxygen atom in the $\gamma$-allylic position (C6 of the Claisen system, Scheme 14). In previous reports [23], Carpenter and Burrows had developed a model to predict the influence of substituents on various pericyclic reactions based on Hückel orbital energy calculations. According to this approach, a $\pi$-
donor substituent in the 6-position should lead to a loss of resonance energy in proceeding from the reactant to the transition state and thus effect a deceleration of the rearrangement. The transition state itself had been shown to be of a rather polar nature with bond breaking considerably more advanced than bond formation [24], which can be described by a diradical resonance structure 71b (Scheme 14). With the silyloxy group in position 2, the polarity will be increased even further [25] and an ionic resonance structure 71c also has to be considered. Given these circumstances, it can be seen how an additional electron-donating substituent at C6 might lower the transition state energy by stabilizing the “allyl cation” substructure C4 to C6 and thus accelerate the reaction by facilitating cleavage of the oxygen–carbon bond.

The prevailing principle has been termed “vinyllogous anomeric effect” as a molecular orbital rationalization may be provided by a $\pi \rightarrow \sigma^*$ interaction in analogy to the anomeric effect [26]. Moreover, the vinyllogous anomeric effect, which was independently introduced by Denmark et al. to explain the unusual diaxial conformation of cyclic $\alpha$-chloroketoximes [27], also seems to account for conformational preferences of certain glycals in the ground state [22c].

This stereoelectronic effect was also suggested as the driving force behind the predominating occurrence of boatlike transition states observed in glycal ketene acetal rearrangements (vide supra). A comprehensive study by Ireland et al. [28] compared the stereochemical behavior of pyranoid, furanoid, and acyclic glycal starting materials with the respective all-carbon analogs. The propionates 72 were selectively converted to the (E)- or the (Z)-ketene acetics 73, which rearranged to the methyl-branched acids 78 in varying diastereomeric ratios (Scheme 15). Cyclohexenyl derivative (E)-73a gave acid (S)-78a as the major product, thereby following the usual course through a chairlike transition state 74a. From isomer (Z)-73a, the same (S)-configured product was formed, which in this case required a boatlike transition state 77a. This was readily explained by the large difference in steric interactions for the two transition state structures in this particular example. The glycal-derived ketene acetics 73b, however, in both cases preferred rearrangement through a boatlike transition state 75b and 77b, respectively, which could not be sufficiently accounted for by steric reasons.

A similar picture was obtained from the cyclopentenyl/furanoid glycal series of starting materials. The carboyclic compounds showed the expected preference for a chairlike transition state except for situations with extreme steric hindrance, whereas all of the investigated glycals favored a boatlike transition state irrespective of steric influences. Two stereoelectronic explanations were
suggested: The glycal oxygen atom stabilizes the dipolar transition state in either conformation; however, the boat form, which is assumed to have a “looser” geometry with a higher degree of C–O bond cleavage \[29\], will be significantly more affected by the stabilizing donor substituent. Additionally, the Coulombic attraction between the two ends of the dipole induced by the vinylogous anomeric effect is maximized in the boatlike transition state as compared to the chair form. Energy calculations based on kinetic rate determinations indicated an increased relative stabilization of the boatlike transition state in the glycal series in the order of 1–2 kcal mol\(^{-1}\).

Rearrangement of a glycal-derived N,O-ketene acetal was reported by Columbo et al.\[30\] during the synthesis of C-glycosyl α-amino acids (Scheme 16). Following the Steglich methodology \[31\] for the synthesis of γ-dehydro-α-amino acids, N-benzoylalanine ester 79 was dehydrated to an intermediate oxazole 80 that rearranged at room temperature to the oxazolone 81 as a 3:1 diastereomeric mixture. Further manipulations resulted in the synthesis of the two C-glycosyl amino acids 82 and 83, the latter being obtained as the γ-lactone.

An enzyme-catalyzed Claisen rearrangement of a glycal derivative was presented in an interesting contribution by Berchtold et al.\[32\]. The sigmatropic rearrangement of chorismate 84 to prephenate 85 in the shikimate biosynthetic pathway (Scheme 17) is one of the most intriguing transformations found in nature and its mechanistic details are little understood \[33\]. In a program to investigate the structural requirements for chorismate mutase catalysis, 6-oxa-5,6-dihydrochorismate 86 was shown to be an excellent substrate for chorisma-
The rearrangement of glycal $\text{86}$ to $\text{87}$, which without catalysis proceeded with a half-life of $1200$ h at $30^\circ C$, was accelerated by the enzyme by a factor $\frac{k_{\text{cat}}}{k_{\text{uncat}}} = 1 \times 10^6$, compared to $\frac{k_{\text{cat}}}{k_{\text{uncat}}} = 2 \times 10^6$ for the natural substrate.

2.2 Other Endocyclic Unsaturated Derivatives

2,3-Unsaturated glycosides, which are easily obtained by the reaction of glycals with nucleophiles [34], served as the starting materials for the first reported Claisen rearrangement in carbohydrate chemistry [35] by Ferrier and Vethaviyasar (Scheme 18). Heating vinyl ethers $\text{88a}$ and $\text{88b}$ at $185^\circ C$ resulted in the
formation of the branched aldehydes $89a$ and $89b$ in 75 and 70% yield, respectively. The threo-compound $89b$ rearranged significantly more rapidly than its erythro-analog $88a$, which was explained by the axial orientation of the migrating residue. Curran et al. applied the Ireland procedure to the structurally related acetate $90$ to obtain unsaturated branched-chain ester $91$. This compound as well as similar others served as an intermediate in the synthesis of $(-)$-specionin $92$ and related members of the iridoid family of natural products [36].

Rearrangements involving the anomeric position were reported by Heyns and Hohlweg [37], Descotes et al. [38], and de Raadt and Ferrier [39] for the propenyl and vinyl glycosides $93a$ and $93b$, respectively (Scheme 19). Chandrasekhar et al. [40] investigated a series of analogous phenyl glycosides $95$ and $97$ and found remarkable differences in the reaction rates of $\alpha$- and $\beta$-anomers. In this only example of an aromatic Claisen rearrangement in carbohydrate chemistry to date, sigmatropic rearrangement was followed by tautomerization of the initially formed cyclohexadienones to give phenols $96$ and $98$ as the isolated products.

Claisen rearrangement of 3,4-unsaturated glycosides to C4-branched derivatives provided useful intermediates for the total synthesis of thromboxanes (Scheme 20). First reported independently by Corey et al. [41] and Hernandez [42], both the Eschenmoser amide acetal and the Johnson orthoester procedure afforded good results for the conversion of allylic alcohol $99$ ($R_1 = \text{Me}, R_2 = \text{H}$) to the respective amide or ester $100$. Corey et al. further transformed the former compound to lactone $101$, previously described as a precursor for the total synthesis of thromboxane B$_2$ (102). A number of further derivatives $100$ ($R_1 = \text{allyl}$, $R_2 = \text{H}$ or TBDMS, $R_3 = \text{NMe}_2$ or OEt) and its C2-epimer were prepared in a similar manner during later thromboxane synthetic studies [43, 44].

The same conversion of $99$ to $100$ was also utilized by Fleet et al. [45] for the enantiospecific synthesis of $(S)$-quinuclidinol ($103$, Scheme 21). White et al. [46] employed the thermal rearrangement of the related vinyl ether $104$ to aldehyde $105$ for the total synthesis of monic acid C ($106$).
Aiming at the total synthesis of the antibiotic and antitumor agent nogalomycin, Vatele [47] studied the Claisen rearrangement of 4,5-unsaturated glycosides as an efficient method for the stereoselective formation of a quarternary chiral center (Scheme 22). The α,β-unsaturated ester 110 was formed by elimination of the sulfinyl group subsequent to rearrangement of ketene acetal 109.
2.3 Exocyclic Unsaturated Derivatives

Stereoselective syntheses of geminal dialkyl sugars were described in a series of reports [48] by Fraser-Reid et al. (Scheme 23). Claisen rearrangement of exocyclic allylic alcohols 111–113 in all cases proceeded with bond formation taking place from the β-face, irrespective of ring substitution. For the C2- and C4-alkylidene derivatives 111 and 113, respectively, this had to involve an axial orientation of the newly formed bond, an unusual finding, which is in marked contrast to the equatorial folding generally observed for analogous carbocyclic structures. An explanation might be provided by electronic interaction of the ring oxygen lone pair with the electron-deficient orbital at the spiro carbon, as shown schematically for the C4-substituted derivative 117. This methodology was successfully incorporated into several synthetic projects [49, 50].

The exclusive β-folding selectivity was lost, however, when proceeding to substituted allylic alcohols [51]. Probably due to some steric hindrance caused by the adjacent methyl group, Eschenmoser–Claisen rearrangement of 118 in-
volved bond formation from the α-face resulting in the formation of amide 119 (Scheme 24). The different configuration of side-chain epimer 120 apparently avoided such steric interference and reacted in the previously encountered way. Substitution in the vinylic portion of the Claisen system, as exemplified in the Johnson orthopropionate rearrangement starting from primary allylic alcohol 122, did not affect the β-folding pattern. Additionally, an exclusive diastereoselectivity could be observed for the asymmetric center in the side chain, leading to ester 123 as the only isolated product.

Similar rearrangements were reported by Tadano et al. employing furanoid starting materials. Although these generally exhibited a greater stereochemical ambiguity, with the highly shielded diacetonide 124 (Scheme 25) selective β-folding was achieved during Johnson orthoester rearrangement [52]. The branched ester 125 obtained served as an intermediate in the synthesis of (+)-asteltoxin (126) [53]. Reaction of the same starting material with ortho-propionate yielded the chiral ester 127 in a 5:1 diastereomeric ratio with its side-chain epimer [54] and resulted in the synthesis of the antibiotic (−)-acetomyacin (128) [55]. Reaction of 124 with the cyclic acetals 129 and 131, alcohol elimination, and rearrangement of the intermediate enol ethers resulted in the chiral cyclohexanone 130 and cyclohexenone 132, respectively. Subsequent hydride reduction and 1,4-conjugate additions of these highly functionalized products succeeded with exclusive facial selectivity [56].

Even with the reaction site placed in lower proximity to the furanoside ring, as in the side-chain allylic alcohols 133 and 135 (Scheme 26), a stereodirecting influence could be achieved in some cases as, for example, with the C3-308
Scheme 24. Exocyclic Claisen rearrangement of substituted C3-alkyldene pyranosides: Varying stereoselectivities [51]

*kyl derivative* 135 [57]. Although high selectivities were also observed during the formation of branched esters 134 from (Z)-allylic alcohol 133, both the C3-epimer and the (E)-configured geometrical isomer resulted in 1:1 diastereomeric mixtures [58].

Water-promoted Claisen rearrangement in the aglycone moiety of unprotected glucosides was reported by Augé et al. [59]. Reaction of allyl vinyl ethers 137a and 140a in alkaline aqueous solution proceeded at 60 °C to give, after in situ reduction, the unsaturated alcohols 138 and 141, respectively (Scheme 27). In comparison, thermal rearrangement of the corresponding acetates in toluene required, even at a higher temperature, a much longer reaction time for the transformation of 137b to 139. α-Anomer 140b did not withstand these harsher conditions and eliminated immediately following rearrangement to conjugated aldehyde 143 and tetra-O-acetylgucose 142. The rate-enhancement of reactions in aqueous solution through entropy-driven association of the hydrophobic parts of the glyco-organic substrates had previously also been demonstrated for [4 + 2] cycloadditions [60]. The main purpose of the saccharide residue was to increase the water solubility of the respective substrates. At the same time, the chirality of the remote pyranoside ring induced a moderate stereoselectivity during the reactions.
Scheme 25. Stereoselective exocyclic Claisen rearrangements of a C3-alkylidene furanose and applications in natural product syntheses [52–56]

Scheme 26. Stereochemical induction in the remote-site exocyclic Claisen rearrangement of furanoses [57, 58]
Carbohydrate-Derived Enol Ethers and Ketene Acetals

3.1 Enol Ethers

Application of the Claisen rearrangement to systems in which the vinylic portion is of carbohydrate origin is considerably restricted by the difficulty in preparing the respective starting enol ethers. Only one study has been reported so far. This was by Furuichi et al. [61] as an extension of their previous synthesis of vicinal deoxy-carbonyl sugars by the elimination of \( \beta \)-selenoxy alcohols [62]. The \( \beta \)-hydroxyphenylselenides 145 and 149 were accessible by diaxial ring opening of the anhydro sugars 144 and 148 and were transformed into the corresponding allyl ethers 146 and 150 (Scheme 28).

Oxidation to the intermediate selenoxides 147 and 151 and \( \beta \)-elimination provided the allyl enol ethers 152 and 154, which under mild conditions (elimination in refluxing benzene) could be isolated and characterized. When the elimination was performed in refluxing xylene, it was immediately followed by sigmatropic rearrangement to the \( C \)-allyl keto sugars 153 and 155. As is shown in Scheme 29, the main products in each case were those with the side chain in axial orientation. The thermodynamically more stable equatorial isomers, however, were readily formed upon treatment with silica gel, so that both configurations can be obtained selectively with this methodology.

The reaction of crotyl ether 156 resulted in the predominant formation of \((R)\)-configured \( C \)-butenyl derivative 158, thus demonstrating that sigmatropic rearrangement in this system preferably proceeded through a chairlike transition state 157 (Scheme 30). The deoxy branched-chain derivatives obtained contain an array of functional groups suitable for selective further manipulations and thus appear to be attractive chiral building blocks for...
Scheme 28. Intermediate sugar selenoxides for the synthesis of enol ethers [61, 62]

Scheme 29. Synthesis and Claisen rearrangement of sugar enol ethers [61, 62]

Scheme 30. Transition state geometry and stereoselectivity in the Claisen rearrangement of a crotyl sugar enol ether [61]
natural product synthesis even though no such applications have yet been reported.

3.2 Ketene Acetals

Uronic acids and their derivatives seem to be particularly suitable starting materials for the Ireland ketene acetal Claisen rearrangement. Allyl uronates can be easily prepared in virtually unlimited variety. However, their conversion to ketene acetals as required for sigmatropic rearrangement is associated with serious fundamental complications; these are summarized in Scheme 31. A typical allyl uronate 159 contains a suitable leaving group in the β-position to the ester carboxyl. Thus, following α-deprotonation, the enolate anion 160, which is supposed to provide ketene acetal 161 by O-silylation, will show a marked tendency to undergo β-elimination to the conjugated ester 162. Under conditions that suppress this process or with deoxygenated substrates that cannot react along a β-elimination pathway, α-elimination of the allylic alkoxide resulting in the formation of ketene 163 and a cascade of ensuing side reactions may become a relevant problem (vide infra).

In a program aimed at the total synthesis of polyether antibiotic monensin, Ireland et al. devised a procedure for the in situ silylation of an ester enolate with a β-leaving group, first executed with the model substrate 165 (Scheme 32). When added to a premixed solution of LDA and TMSCl in 10% HMPA/THF at –100°C, crotyl ester 165 produced after rearrangement at room temperature, desilylation, and treatment with diazomethane, the diastereomeric Claisen products 166a and 166b in almost 80% combined yield [63]. The success of this three-component competition experiment depended on the relative rates of N-silylation vs. enolization and β-elimination vs. O-silylation, respectively, with all of these processes occurring on a subminute time scale at –100°C.

Although sometimes difficult to reproduce (see below), this experimental approach was extended to glycal uronate 167 (Scheme 33) to obtain bis(tetrahy-
drofuran) building block 168 as a diastereomeric mixture [64]. Omission of HMPA from the reaction mixture in an attempt to alter the diastereomeric ratio caused the rate of O-silylation to drop far below the rate of $\beta$-elimination and no Claisen products were detected in that instance. Elaboration of the primary hydroxyl to the monensin tetrahydropyran moiety and reductive elimination within the terminal carbohydrate unit furnished the tricyclic glycal building block 169, suitable for a second Claisen rearrangement after coupling to spiro-ketal acid 170 [65]. This substrate was expected to require considerably less demanding reaction conditions since, without a leaving group in the neigh-

---

**Scheme 32.** Simultaneous enolization-silylation and subsequent Claisen rearrangement of a crotyl penturonate [63]

---

**Scheme 33.** Uronate ketene acetal rearrangement in the total synthesis of monensin [64–66]
boring position, β-elimination can be excluded as a possible side reaction. However, attempts to perform the enolization-silylation step at higher temperatures (−78 °C) and with less reactive silyl chlorides (TBDMSCl, TESCl) led to the isolation of the O-silylated glycal as the only defined reaction product. On the basis of model studies, α-elimination and ketene formation were assumed to be the likely cause. Subsequent fragmentations of the highly reactive ketene would also account for the complete loss of the acid portion of the starting material. At a lower temperature and with the use of the more reactive TMSCl as silylating agent, ketene acetal formation and Claisen rearrangement succeeded to give a diastereomeric mixture of the complex methyl esters 171 in 58% yield. This advanced intermediate finally permitted the total synthesis of monensin (172) to be completed [66].

Rizzacasa et al. [67] further modified the experimental protocol for the reaction of allyl ester 173 (Scheme 34), a closely related analog of the original model substrate in the Ireland study. In this case, the inherent problem of N-silylation of the dialkylamide base prior to enolization was very successfully diminished by changing the order in which the reagents were mixed. Namely, the base had to be added separately to a premixed solution of the ester substrate and the silylating agent. Following this procedure, a yield of 74% was reported for the branched rearrangement products 174a and 174b, with a substantial diastereomeric excess of the D-lyxo epimer. Assignment of the absolute configuration at the quaternary carbon atom was possible by X-ray structural analysis of alcohol 175b [68].

Scheme 34. Modified simultaneous enolization-silylation and subsequent Claisen rearrangement of an allyl penturonate [67–69]

Efforts to reproduce this experiment during our own studies [69] consistently resulted in lower yields between only 50 and 60%. Recovery of approximately matching quantities of unreacted starting material indicated premature consumption of the base by N-silylation as the main side reaction, whereas no loss of the ester by β-elimination was observed. Similar experiences were reported by Rizzacasa et al. when changing to a different substrate structure [70]: Benzyl oxy-substituted uronate 176 gave the rearrangement products 177a and 177b in only 47% total yield, also with complete recovery of the corresponding amount of unchanged starting material (Scheme 35). Even less successful was the conversion of dibenzyloxy derivative 178a in our own study. Attempts to increase C–H acidity by more electron-withdrawing protecting groups, as in dibenzoate 178b, resulted in fragmentation.
The main synthetic purpose of the Rizzacasa group, the preparation of intermediate \( \text{180} \) for the synthesis of zaragozic acid A (181), thus had to be reached by employing the more accessible 2,3-\( \text{cis} \)-derivative \( \text{175a} \) and inverting the stereochemistry of one hydroxyl (Scheme 36).

More recently [71], Rizzacasa et al. achieved a very good yield of 81% in the reaction of “1-deoxy uronate” 182, which also showed a quite remarkable stereo-selectivity (Scheme 37). The main reaction product 183 was further converted to the microbial metabolite sphydrofuran (184). In a similar reaction sequence, we had previously and independently prepared the spirobicyclic dialdo compound 185 [72].

In our recently reported systematic investigation [69], the dependency of total yields on the C-H acidity of the respective esters could also be demonstrated in the reaction of diastereomeric uronates 186 and 188 (Scheme 38). The enantiomeric ketene acetals obtained after deprotonation were expected to show the same chemical behavior during rearrangement, which resulted in the formation of enantiomeric mixtures of C4-epimers 187a and 187b and 189a and 189b, respectively, in virtually the same product ratio. The varying total yields could thus be attributed to different deprotonation rates for substrates with 3,4-\( \text{cis} \) or 3,4-\( \text{trans} \) ring substitution.
In the same study, information about the transition state was obtained by means of cis-pentenyl uronate 190, which gave rise to a mixture of four rearrangement products, two of which are shown in Scheme 39. The side-chain epimers 192a and 192b were formed in a ratio of 5:1. X-ray structural analysis of the major product 192a allowed assignment of the absolute configurations, leading to the conclusion that, during rearrangement, a chairlike transition state 191a is favored.

To facilitate the experimental procedure and possibly improve the yields, we also employed β-deoxygenated starting materials (Scheme 40). However, an attempt to perform enolization of ester 193 prior to the addition of a silylating agent and at a temperature of –78°C only led to the isolation of a dimeric product 194, apparently resulting from an ester condensation of the highly reactive enolate. Therefore, the simultaneous enolization-silylation protocol had to be applied even in the deoxygenated series. In accordance with the previous results, the same mixture of rearrangement products 194 was obtained in varying yields from both diastereomeric uronates 193 and 195. Unfortunately, deoxygenation resulted in a complete loss of stereoselectivity. The lack of a directing influence in the immediate proximity to the reaction center could not be compensated for either by a cis configuration of the remaining ring.
substituents, or by increasing the steric demand of the O3-protecting group as in derivatives 196a–c.

Prior to our investigation, no attempt had been reported to apply the Ireland–Claisen rearrangement to pyranoid uronate derivatives. It soon became apparent that these are associated with even greater difficulties (Scheme 41). The very poor results obtained with galacto- and gluco-esters 198a and 198b, respectively, could not be significantly improved by simple C4-deoxygenation, as was seen in the low-yielding transformation of 200a to 201. The rather rigid chair conformation of the pyranoside ring was assumed to provide a major obstacle for C5-deprotonation and sp3-sp2 rehybridization. Thus, additional
deoxygenation in the anomic position was expected to facilitate ketene acetal formation by increasing the conformational flexibility. Indeed, reaction of 1,4-dideoxy derivative 200b gave the epimeric rearrangement products 202 in a substantially improved yield of 48%; however, with virtually no stereochemical discrimination.

The outlined fundamental problems, and structural limitations notwithstanding, ketene acetal rearrangement of allyl uronates could provide the basis for synthetic transformations of considerable complexity. We recently succeeded in the preparation of methylene-linked saccharide dimers via the readily accessible uronates 203 and 205 (Scheme 42, unpublished results). Particularly gratifying was the reaction of methyl glycoside 205b that gave the corresponding rearrangement products 207a and 207b in a quite remarkable yield of 67%. The very poor stereoselectivity seemed a little surprising considering
the much higher discrimination achieved with the simple allyl esters (vide supra).

Both epimers 207a and 207b were further processed to obtain the fully oxygenated species 208 and 210, which, after deprotection, should give rise to the methylene-linked disaccharide mimetics 209 and 211 (Scheme 43).

### 4 Skeletal Rearrangements

In the mid-1980s, Paquette et al. reported the synthesis of cyclooctanoid natural products based on the ring enlargement of 2-methylene-6-vinyltetrahydropyrans by sigmatropic rearrangement [73]. Analogous oxygen-substituted starting materials should be easily accessible from simple carbohydrate precursors and give rise to highly functionalized chiral cyclooctenones. In a preliminary communication [74], we reported the synthesis and reaction of an exocyclic enol ether 214a (Scheme 44) starting from acetobromoglucose 212 via the known

![Scheme 43. Conversion of the Claisen rearrangement products to disaccharide mimetics](image_url)

![Scheme 44. Preparation of exocyclic sugar enol ethers and skeletal rearrangement to cyclooctenones [74]](image_url)
At an advanced stage in the synthetic sequence, different protecting groups could be introduced. In an initial attempt, tribenzoate 214a was heated at 145°C and provided, after 12 h, carbocycle 215a as the only isolated product in a yield of 60%. The expected strong dependency of the thermal rearrangement on the activation energy was demonstrated in the reaction of triacetate 214b at different temperatures. Gratifyingly, the rather likely yet undesirable isomerization of the exocyclic enol ether to the thermodynamically favored endocyclic derivative was not observed under any of these conditions. No conversion could be achieved in an attempt to perform the reaction of benzyl ether 214c at room temperature catalyzed by triisobutylaluminum, which had been successfully employed by Paquette et al. for similar substrates [76].

Only very recently [77], Sinaÿ et al. presented a series of Ferrier-type rearrangements [78] of 5,6-unsaturated sugars to cyclohexenones. In this study, the same catalyst, applied to the reaction of furanyl C-glycoside 216, yielded exclusively, after reduction of the intermediate ketone, cyclohexanol 217 (Scheme 45). A conceivable Claisen rearrangement to a bicyclic product 218 was apparently not observed.

In the chiral cyclooctenones, the conformational flexibility that is often encountered for eight-membered carbocycles appeared to be considerably reduced by the three sp² carbon atoms. Very sharp and highly resolved proton NMR signals as well as unambiguously observed transannular NO effects permitted tentative deduction of a boat-chair geometry as the favored conformation in solution. X-ray crystallography of triacetate 215b later confirmed the same conformation for the solid state [72]. For such rigid cyclic structures, a pronounced stereoselectivity during subsequent chemical transformations could be anticipated [79]. Two exemplary reactions employing simple, non-stereically demanding reagents indeed resulted in the exclusive formation of a single stereoisomer in each case (Scheme 46). Reduction of the carbonyl group, however, led to a conformationally more flexible structure 220 which no longer allowed assignment of the configuration by NMR spectroscopic methods and is therefore drawn in an ambiguous fashion.

Nagarajan and Sudha [80] employed the skeletal Claisen rearrangement of endocyclic enol ethers for the synthesis of pseudo-sugars (Scheme 47). Starting from glycal 221, a vinyl group could be installed in two steps to provide the starting material enol ether 222. Heating at 240°C then smoothly afforded cyclohexene derivative 223, which allowed easy access to gluco- and manno-configured pseudo-sugars 224a–c by subsequent dihydroxylation.
Perspectives

The preceding collection shows the wide range of unsaturated carbohydrate structures that can be subjected to a Claisen rearrangement to result in an equally diverse array of complex products which can serve as valuable intermediates for a variety of synthetic targets such as C-glycosides, alkyl-branched sugars, pseudo-sugars, saccharide mimetics and non-carbohydrate natural products. The synthetic work has been accompanied by interesting findings of a more general nature. In particular, the often high and sometimes exclusive stereoselectivities further increase the appeal of carbohydrate-based Claisen rearrangements for the solution of complex preparative tasks. The most frequent use has been made of glycals and other endocyclic unsaturated derivatives as the most easily accessible starting materials. Continuous application throughout the years within synthetic programs of many research groups from different areas puts these transformations in the rank of a standard tool of organic synthesis and allows the expectation that they will continue to serve important purposes in future endeavors. Studies employing other types of unsaturated carbohydrate structures have been refined in a limited number of laboratories. In particular, the ketene acetal rearrangement starting from uronic acid esters can be associated with substantial experimental difficulties that might discourage its more extensive use. However, since this method also provides an entry into the most complex types of product structures, it can be hoped that it will nonetheless stimulate further expansion and elimination of existing problems in the course

Scheme 46. Stereoselective transformations of the conformationally restricted chiral cyclooctenones [72]

Scheme 47. Preparation of a vinyl-branched glycal, skeletal rearrangement, and conversion to carbasugars [80]

5 Perspectives

The preceding collection shows the wide range of unsaturated carbohydrate structures that can be subjected to a Claisen rearrangement to result in an equally diverse array of complex products which can serve as valuable intermediates for a variety of synthetic targets such as C-glycosides, alkyl-branched sugars, pseudo-sugars, saccharide mimetics and non-carbohydrate natural products. The synthetic work has been accompanied by interesting findings of a more general nature. In particular, the often high and sometimes exclusive stereoselectivities further increase the appeal of carbohydrate-based Claisen rearrangements for the solution of complex preparative tasks. The most frequent use has been made of glycals and other endocyclic unsaturated derivatives as the most easily accessible starting materials. Continuous application throughout the years within synthetic programs of many research groups from different areas puts these transformations in the rank of a standard tool of organic synthesis and allows the expectation that they will continue to serve important purposes in future endeavors. Studies employing other types of unsaturated carbohydrate structures have been refined in a limited number of laboratories. In particular, the ketene acetal rearrangement starting from uronic acid esters can be associated with substantial experimental difficulties that might discourage its more extensive use. However, since this method also provides an entry into the most complex types of product structures, it can be hoped that it will nonetheless stimulate further expansion and elimination of existing problems in the course
of future applications. The most recent development has been the skeletal rearrangement of vinyl-branched sugar enol ethers that is associated with a particularly uncomplicated and high-yielding experimental procedure. Its value for the synthesis of sugar mimetics has already been demonstrated. The synthesis of highly functionalized chiral carbocycles in a more general context also seems an attractive future application.

6 References


64. (a) Ireland RE, Norbeck DW, Mandel GS, Mandel NS (1985) J Am Chem Soc 3285; (b) Ireland RE, Armstrong JD, Lebreton J, Meissner RS, Rizzacasa MA (1993) ibid 115:7152
Selected isomerisation, epimerisation and rearrangement reactions will be presented with a view to preparative applications.

**Keywords:** Isomerisation, Epimerisation, Nucleophilic rearrangements, Radicals, Ring contractions

1 Introduction .................................................. 327

2 Isomerisation and Epimerisation .................................................. 327

3 Rearrangements Involving Nucleophiles .................................................. 331

4 Rearrangements Involving Radical Species .................................................. 333

5 Rearrangements Leading to Ring Contractions .................................................. 336

6 Miscellaneous Rearrangements .................................................. 341

7 References .................................................. 344

1 Introduction

The aim of this account is to outline synthetically interesting rearrangements selected from the literature which have not been covered in previous chapters. The following areas will be discussed: Unusual cases of isomerisations and epimerisations as well as rearrangements involving nucleophiles, radical species and reactions leading to ring-contracted products.

2 Isomerisation and Epimerisation

The Meerwein–Ponndorf–Verley/Oppenauer reaction [1] induced by air-oxidised samarium(II) iodide has been found to be a means to directly isomerise aldohexopyranoses into ketohexopyranoses. Iadonisi and co-workers [2] report-
ed that compounds such as 1 could be converted into derivative 2 in 81% yield by treating with air-oxidised samarium(II) iodide in refluxing tetrahydrofuran (Scheme 1). The yield of 2 could be improved by changing the reaction solvent from tetrahydrofuran to tetrahydropyran. In addition, it was also found that reaction times could be thereby reduced [3]. This methodology has been used to isomerise the d-galacto and d-manno equivalents of 1 with similar success.

During an investigation into the reactions and interactions which occur when the sugar moieties of C-glycosides are submitted to hydrolysis, Kumazawa and co-workers made an interesting observation involving a d-gluc to d-fructo isomerisation [4]. Treatment of β-d-C-glucopyranosyl compound 3 with a catalytic amount of p-toluenesulfonic acid in boiling water gave spiroketal derivative 4 in 35% yield, the structure of which was confirmed by X-ray crystallographic structural analysis of 5 (Scheme 2). This unusual reaction is still under investigation by these workers.

During their studies concerning C-1H–C-2H exchange reactions with Raney nickel catalyst in deuterium oxide, Perlin and Balza made a number of observations concerning the regio- and stereoselective aspects of this reaction [5].
particular, the epimerisation of a range of carbohydrates with Raney nickel in boiling water was examined. Endocyclic epimerisation was observed with compounds such as D-galactopyranoside 6, as here D-talo derivative 7 was obtained in 20% yield. In addition, exocyclic epimerisation was also observed. For example, D-glucofuranose 8 furnished L-idofuranose 9 in 25% yield after Raney nickel treatment (Scheme 3).

Miethchen and co-workers have published a number of papers concerning the use of chloral and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC) as a means to invert configuration of chiral centres in carbohydrates. These reagents were found to react with bis-vicinal triols with a cis, trans sequence of hydroxyl groups and this resulted in the formation of cyclic acetals in which the central atom of the triol had been inverted. For example, the rare monosaccharide D-tagatose has been easily prepared from D-fructose (Scheme 4) [6]. Concerning the mechanism of this reaction, chloral and DCC react with fructose derivative 10 to give intermediates 11 and 12. The latter mentioned intermediate then reacts intra-molecularly in an S_N2-type reaction as shown. This furnished product 13 in 59% yield.

This methodology has been applied to a number of differently configured monosaccharides including D-lyxo, L-arabino, D-manno, D-galacto and L-rhamno sugars. These were converted into the corresponding C-3 epimers, namely D-arabino, L-lyxo, D-altro, D-gulo and 6-deoxy-L-altro derivatives, respectively [7]. Furthermore, this approach has been applied to the selective epimerisation of one of the monosaccharide moieties in disaccharides [8], as shown in Scheme 5, as well as to cyclitol derivatives [9], glycosyl azides and N-acetylglycosylamines of rare monosaccharides [10].

It has been recently shown [11] that a Swern oxidation followed by an intra-molecular Tischenko reaction gives access to L-idose or L-altrose derivatives from the corresponding protected hexos-5-uloses. As can be seen from Scheme 6, D-glucitol 14 was oxidised to aldulose 15 via a Swern oxidation. Subsequently, this compound was treated with a trivalent samarium reagent (tert-BuOSmI_3), thereby inducing a Tischenko reaction, which led to L-ido-configured tert-butyl.

Scheme 3. (a) Raney nickel, H_2O, reflux
Scheme 4. (a) Chlortal/DCC, ClCH\(_2\)CH\(_2\)Cl, reflux

Scheme 5. (a) Chlortal/DCC, ClCH\(_2\)CH\(_2\)Cl, reflux; (b) Et\(_3\)N/MeOH, reflux

Scheme 6. (a) Swern oxidation; (b) t-BuOSmI\(_2\), THF; (c) CF\(_3\)CO\(_2\)H/CH\(_2\)Cl\(_2\) (1:1), 0°C
ester 16. This compound was then lactonised to 17 in 65% yield overall yield. Iadonisi and co-workers also applied this reaction sequence to the D-galacto analog of 14 and obtained a mixture of D-galacto and L-altro lactones (1:5) in 78% overall yield. A mechanistic explanation for the observed diastereoselectivities of the Tischenko step was also presented.

3 Rearrangements Involving Nucleophiles

On account of their biological activity, pyrazolidinones and hydroxypyrrrolidines have sparked much interest in the field of synthetic chemistry [12]. On the one hand, the former represent a new class of antibacterial agents and intermediates for the preparation of β-lactams. On the other, the latter and bicyclic derivatives thereof are interesting in their own right as glycosidase inhibitors. In this context, Chmielewski and co-workers have published a series of papers dealing with the conjugate addition-rearrangement of hydrazines and hydroxylamines to α,β-unsaturated δ-lactones. These reactions proceed anti to the terminal substituent of the enelactone to afford 5-substituted pyrazolidin-3-ones or 3-substituted isoxazolidin-5-ones, respectively.

As depicted in Scheme 7, lactone 18 was reacted with N-benzylhydrazine to afford pyrazolidin-3-one 19 which was acetylated to give 20 in 88% overall yield as the sole product [13]. Employing lactone 21 and N-benzylhydroxylamine instead of N-benzylhydrazine furnished 3-substituted isoxazolidin-5-one 22 in good yield [14]. This strategy has been applied to a variety of δ-lactone derivatives with similar success [15]. Chmielewski and co-workers have taken this addition-rearrangement reaction one step further to allow the synthesis of bicyclic pyrazolidinones, as shown in Scheme 8. Treating D-erythro derivative 23 with hydrazine gave intermediate 24, which then rearranged to 25 as before. However, owing to the leaving group at former C-6, this compound underwent intramolecular ring closure to give bicyclic structure 26 in 60% yield.

Scheme 7. (a) BnNHNH₂, EtOH; (b) Ac₂O, pyridine; (c) BnNHOH, EtOH
Concerning the synthesis of potential chiral building blocks, Bols and Thom- 
sen recently reported [16] an unusual tandem elimination-Favorskii rearrange- 
ment involving tritosylate 27. Upon treatment of this compound with sodium 
methoxide in chloroform, strained compound 31 was obtained in 44% isolated 
yield. This result was explained by the intermediates depicted in Scheme 9. Eli-
mination of tosylate was thought to give structure 28 which then formed ketone 
29 after attack by methoxide. The rearrangement of 29, via 30, resulted in the for-
mation of product 31. The use of other tritosylates was found to have a detri-
mental effect on the yields of Favorskii products.
Aziridino sugars are interesting synthetic targets because of their biological activity and utility as synthetic intermediates. In this context, Voelter and co-workers [17] exploited an aza-Payne rearrangement [18] to develop a mild one pot synthesis of these compounds from 2,3-anhydro sugars (Scheme 10). Dissolving α-aminooxirane 32 in a mixture of trimethylsilyl azide and diethyl ether, and treating this with diethyl ether-boron trifluoride to aid intramolecular oxirane ring opening from the trans-disposed nitrogen moiety, led to α-hydroxyepimine 33 in 53% yield. This methodology was successfully applied to other aminosugars in order to obtain the corresponding aziridino products.

![Scheme 10](image)

**Scheme 10.** \( R = p-C_6H_4-Boc \) (a) Me₃SiN₃, BF₃·OEt₂, Et₂O

### 4 Rearrangements Involving Radical Species

The application of intramolecular radical cyclisations in synthetic organic chemistry is a valuable approach to obtain important synthetic targets such as natural product precursors and biologically active substances. The use of carbohydrate starting materials in this field is no exception to this because of their well-defined stereochemistry, highly functionalised nature and availability.

Alduronic acid 4,1- and 5,1-lactones, also termed pseudolactones, are useful starting materials in the synthesis of carbocycles. Suárez and co-workers recently reported [19] a so called “tandem strategy”, that is a combination of consecutive reactions in one synthetic step, which allowed access to alduronic acid lactones from the corresponding uronic acids. This approach has the added advantage that it is compatible with the stability of protective groups frequently used in carbohydrate chemistry. In the first step of this methodology (Scheme 11), an alkoxy anomeric radical (35) is formed from alduronic pyranose 34 by the action of a hypervalent iodine reagent/iodine system [(diacetoxyiodo)benzene, iodine] which also promotes a β-fragmentation reaction of the C-1–C-2 bond to give 36. In the second step, the intermediate C-2 radical is oxidised by an excess of reagent to give the oxonium ion 37 which then reacts intramolecularly with the nucleophilic carboxyl group to give lactone 38. Alduronic acid lactone 38 was furnished in a 70% yield (α/β; 2.7:1) from uronic acid 34. This approach has been applied to a range of pentose and hexose uronic acids with either the threose or erythrose configuration. These substrates also possessed a number of different protecting groups that remained intact after the transformation.
Photochemically induced rearrangements have also been reported to be a means to obtain lactone derivatives. Collins and co-workers investigated the photoisomerisation of a number of hexopyran-3-oloses into their respective 1,5-lactones [20]. Taking 3-ulose 39 (Scheme 12) as an example, this was converted into a single product after UV irradiation in acetonitrile, namely lactone 40, which was isolated in 45% yield. An insight into the mechanism of this transformation was gained by irradiating the C-1 deuterated analog of 39. It was found that the C-3 deuterated analog of 40 was the sole product. On the basis of this result and other experiments, a reaction mechanism was proposed.

The regio- and stereoselective synthesis of branched sugars has been mainly spurred by their occurrence in a large range of natural products, in particular antibiotics. To this end, Sinaï and co-workers reported [21] a stereoselective approach to this class of compounds by applying a silylmethylene radical cyclisation (Scheme 13). Under basic conditions, allylic alcohol 41 was converted into derivative 42 employing (bromomethyl)chlorodimethylsilane. Radical cyclisation of this compound was effected in refluxing benzene with tributyltin hydride and azobis(isobutyronitrile) (AIBN) to furnish compound 43. This was
then oxidised according to the Tamao–Kumada method [22] to give diol 44 in 73% yield. This method was also applied to a number of other allylic alcohol substrates to obtain the corresponding branched sugars in respectable yields.

Fraser-Reid and co-workers recently published an interesting radical cyclisation–intermolecular trapping sequence to obtain highly functionalised C-glycosyl derivatives in one step [23], as depicted in Scheme 14. After homolytic cleavage of the carbon–bromine bond of glycal 45, effected with tri-n-butyltin hydride and AIBN, the resulting carbon-centred radical subsequently added to C-2 in an intramolecular fashion thereby generating a stabilised α-oxy radical at C-1. This species was then trapped with unsaturated ulose 46 to furnish C-glycosides 47 in 70% yield. A number of different derivatives were made in this way and conclusions were drawn concerning the influence of the stereochemistry of starting material on the product obtained.

Scheme 13. (a) BrCH(CH₃)₂SiCl, Et₃N, CH₂Cl₂; (b) Bu₃SnH, AIBN, benzene, reflux; (c) H₂O₂, Na₂CO₃, MeOH, THF

Scheme 14. (a) Bu₃SnH, benzene, AIBN, Δ
Rearrangements Leading to Ring Contractions

The ring contraction of carbohydrates constitutes a very useful route to functionalised and enantiomerically pure carbocycles. These compounds play a significant role in the construction of biologically active compounds such as enzyme regulators [24], the Corey lactone [25] and related prostaglandin intermediates [26], just to mention a few.

In particular, the growing importance of organometallic compounds in this field is evidenced by the increasing number of reports in the literature. One reagent that deserves special attention on the basis of its synthetic utility is the one-electron reducing agent samarium(II) iodide [27]. Known as a means to cyclise non-carbohydrate aldehydes or ketones tethered to olefins, Enholm and Trivellas [28] applied this strategy in the late 1980s to open-chain carbohydrate templates, as demonstrated in Scheme 15.

Scheme 15. (a) Ph₃P = CHCO₂Me, CH₂Cl₂, PhCO₂H; (b) PDC, CH₂Cl₂, 3Å sieves, HOAc; (c) SmI₂, THF, MeOH, −78°C
Subjecting the \( \alpha \)-lyxose derivative 48 to a Wittig reaction gave a mixture of chromatographically separable compounds, namely \( Z \)- and \( E \)-isomers 49 and 50 (3:1), respectively, in 80% total yield. Oxidation of the major \( Z \)-isomer 49 with pyridinium dichromate provided open-chain aldehyde 51, which was then cyclised with two equivalents of SmI\(_2\) at low temperature. This procedure furnished two products 52 and 53 (100:1), the former being provided in 73% isolated yield. The diastereoselectivity of this cyclisation step is indeed noteworthy. Interestingly, subjecting the \( E \)-isomer 50 to this reaction sequence provided the same products 52 and 53 (1:4), although a reversal of product ratio was observed. Apparently, the \( Z \)-isomer 49 favoured the formation of \( cis \)-product 52, while the \( E \)-isomer 50 favoured the \( trans \)-product 53. These authors mentioned that this observed influence of olefin geometry on the product distribution had been previously reported in similar non-carbohydrate compounds. Enholm and Trivelles later extended this approach to the synthesis of the C-ring of Anguidine [29] as well as more highly functionalised carbocycles. The latter was achieved by the addition of aldehydes or ketones during the cyclisation step, which allowed the formation of an additional chiral centre in a selective manner [30].

SmI\(_2\) has also been applied to the synthesis of aminocyclopentanes, as reported by Holzapfel and Grové [31]. As can be seen in Scheme 16, SmI\(_2\) was used to reductively cyclise intermediate 54 to yield cyclopentanes 56 and 57 (9:1) in a total yield of 78%. Replacing the benzyl protecting groups with pivaloyl moieties (55) was found to have a positive influence on the stereochemical outcome of the reaction, although this reaction was accompanied by pivaloyl group migration. Only one stereoisomer was isolated, namely the \( trans \)-product 58. 

Sinaï and co-workers demonstrated [32] that the use of SmI\(_2\) permitted the ring contraction of cyclic carbohydrate precursors containing an external aldehyde group in “one pot”. As shown in Scheme 17, glucoside 59 was oxidised into derivative 60, which was then subjected to SmI\(_2\) to give product 66 (63% yield.

\[ \text{Scheme 16. (a) H}_2\text{NOMe} \cdot \text{HCl, pyridine; (b) PPh}_3, \text{imidazole, I}_2; (c) SmI}_2, \text{THF, HMPA} \]
calculated from 59). Interestingly, only the cis-product 66 was observed in this reaction. These authors also proposed a possible mechanism. It was envisaged that the first equivalent of SmI\(_2\) reduced aldehyde 60 to samarium ketyl 61, which was, in turn, reduced by a second equivalent of SmI\(_2\) to species 62. This disamarium intermediate then ring opened to give 63, which subsequently eliminated methoxide to give species 64. This key intermediate cyclised via nucleophilic attack of the samarium enolate onto the aldehyde to furnish 65. Final reduction of 65 afforded the final product 66. Employing the manno-analog of 60 as starting material in this sequence also gave the cis-isomer as the sole product. Other functional groups at C-2 as well as C-3 were also not found to influence the stereochemical outcome of this reaction.

Cyclic substrates containing an external double bond [33] or an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated ester [34] instead of an aldehyde moiety have also been successfully ring contracted with SmI\(_2\) to give the corresponding cyclopentane derivatives. Recently, Matsuda and co-workers reported the rearrangement of compound 67 into carbocyclic derivative 68 in 91% yield and as the sole product (Scheme 18).
Here a mixture of SmI$_2$ (5.0 equiv) and THF/MeOH (15:1) was employed to effect the cyclisation. Interestingly, employing the galacto-analog of 67 resulted in a decrease in reaction stereoselectivity.

Zirconium-mediated ring contractions of derivatives possessing an external double bond have also been reported in the literature by Taguchi and co-workers [35, 36]. Zirconacycle “Cp$_2$Zr” was generated in situ at –78°C before the vinylic carbohydrate derivative was added followed by BF$_3$·OEt$_2$. Compound 69 for example (Scheme 19) was transformed into a single isomer 70 in 65% yield with this reagent. Interestingly, it was found that the stereochemistry of the vinyl group was always trans to the adjacent (formerly C-4) benzyloxy or benzyxymethyl group.

The cyclisation of hex-5-enyl radicals to cyclopentylmethyl radicals and subsequent trapping by various reagents is another synthetically interesting approach to cyclopentane derivatives. In particular, RajanBabu and co-workers have shown [37, 38] that a number of prostanoid intermediates, including the Corey lactone, can be prepared by this approach. Treatment of 3-deoxyglucose derivative 71, for example, with the Wittig reagent shown in Scheme 20 yielded a mixture of Z- and E-isomers 72 which were used as a mixture for the next step. Reacting with thiocarbonylbis(imidazole) furnished 73 which, after treatment with tributyltin hydride and AIBN under Barton’s deoxygenation conditions, afforded cyclopentane derivative 74 as the sole product. This compound was then converted into the Corey lactone after a number of synthetic steps.

Krohn and Heins [39] reported an unusual ring-contraction reaction following the elimination of water from a β-hydroxy-1,3-dithiane intermediate 76. An attempt to thioacetalize α-branched hexopyranoside 75 did not give the expected dithioacetal 76, but a mixture C-glycofuranoside 77 in 80% yield and
epimeric deoxygenation products 78 (12% yield), as indicated in Scheme 21. Evidently, upon formation of 76, elimination of the hydroxyl group on C-2 took place and, instead of acid-catalysed addition to the double bond occurring at the dithiane-carbon (C-1), the addition occurred at C-2 to yield C-glycoside 77. This compound clearly lends itself to further transformations on account of the protected aldehyde moiety at C-1 and, in doing so, allows access to other branched deoxy C-glycoside derivatives.
Preparing per-O-alkylated glycono-δ-lactones from the corresponding glyco-pyranosides with the aid of trimethylsilyl azide and tin(IV) chloride, Ugi and co-workers [40] also recovered a ring-contracted compound as a minor product. As can be seen from Scheme 22, glycoside 79 afforded two products, the desired lactone 80 as well as the ring-contracted product 81. An unprecedented sigmatropic rearrangement was thought to account for the formation of 81.

6 Miscellaneous Rearrangements

Aspinall and Knebl [41] reported an interesting Hofmann rearrangement of amide 82 into carbamate 83 (83% yield, Scheme 23). This reaction was induced with lead tetraacetate in tert-butanol and pyridine at reflux temperature. This approach was also applied to disaccharide derivatives with equal success. A number of benzylated glycosides containing an amide substituent were also shown to undergo a Hofmann rearrangement to give the corresponding carbamates [42]. Mixtures of sodium methoxide, bromine and methanol or sodium hydroxide, sodium bromite and methanol were also found to effect this transformation, although in inferior yields (20–30%) as compared with the lead tetraacetate method. In addition, employing a tert-butyldimethylsilyl-protected analog permitted the isolation of a bromoamide intermediate.

More recently, Santoyo González and co-workers [43] reported the Hofmann rearrangement of amide 84 into cyclic carbamate 85 (40% yield, Scheme 24). This was achieved with a mixture of mercuric acetate, N-bromosuccinimide and N,N-dimethylformamide.

Ichikawa and co-workers have published a number of papers disclosing an allyl cyanate to isocyanate rearrangement and its application to the synthesis of aminosugars [44, 45]. A nitrogen substituent can be introduced into the pyra-
nose framework by a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement of an allyl cyanate. For example, allyl cyanate \(86\) underwent a sigmatropic rearrangement to furnish isocyanate \(87\), which was then transformed in situ into acetamide \(88\) (Scheme 25). Subsequent synthetic steps employing this compound afforded \(\text{D}-\text{perosamine}\), a substance present in a number of natural products.

The rearrangement of carbohydrate thiocarbonates has also been reported by Doane and co-workers [46, 47]. As depicted in Scheme 26, thionocarbonate \(89\) was treated with potassium iodide in acetonitrile to give monothiolcarbonate \(90\) in 84% yield. This method was also successfully applied to furanoses bearing other protecting groups as well as similar pyranoside derivatives.

Jenkins and co-workers [48] recently published an interesting report where carbohydrate precursor \(91\) was converted into enantiomerically pure cyclopentanone aldehydes \(95\) and \(96\) in 61 and 14% yield, respectively. This reaction was brought about by the addition of zinc shot in a mixture of isopropyl alcohol and water at reflux temperature, in a similar manner to that reported by Vasella and Bernet [49]. The proposed mechanism of this zinc reduction is given in Scheme 27. Zinc is thought to attack the bromo substituent of \(91\) leading to ring-cleavage product aldehyde \(92\). This compound, which can also be regarded as an enedione, is converted into dianion \(93\) by the transfer of two electrons from zinc. Intermediate \(93\) is then protonated to give \(94\) which can be further protonated from the \(\beta\) or \(\alpha\) face to give \(95\) and \(96\), respectively.
Scheme 27. (a) Zn shot, i-PrOH/H$_2$O (10:1), reflux
7 References

Author Index Volume 201–215

The volume numbers are printed in italics

Augé J, see Lubineau A (1999) 206:1–39
Bartlett RJ, see Sun J-Q (1999) 203:121–145
Brand SC, see Haley MM (1999) 201:81–129
Cloutet E, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
Cooper DL, see Raimondi M (1999) 203:105–120
Croteau R, see Davis EM (2000) 209:53–95
Curran DR, see Maul JJ (1999) 206:79–105
de la Plata BC, see Ruano JLG (1999) 204:1–126
Diederich F, Gobbi L (1999) Cyclic and Linear Acetylenic Molecular Scaffolding, 201:43–79
Diederich F, see Smith DK (2000) 210:183–227
Djakovitch L, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
Donges D, see Yersin H (2001) 214:81–186
Gamelin DR, Güdel HU (2001) Upconversion Processes in Transition Metal and Rare Earth Metal Systems. 214:1–56
Glasbeek M (2001) Excited State Spectroscopy and Excited State Dynamics of Rh(III) and Pd(II) Chelates as Studied by Optically Detected Magnetic Resonance Techniques. 213:95–142
Gobbi L, see Diederich F (1999) 201:43–129
Güdel HU, see Gamelin DR (2001) 214:1–56
Hadjiraoglou LP, see de Meijere A (2000) 207:149–227
Kato S, see Murai T (2000) 208:177–199
Khlebnikov AF, see de Meijere A (2000) 207:89–147
Kirtman B (1999) Local Space Approximation Methods for Correlated Electronic Structure Calculations in Large Delocalized Systems that are Locally Perturbed. 203:147–166
Knochel P, see Betzemeier B (1999) 206:61–78
Kozhushkov SI, see de Meijere A (1999) 201:1–42
Kozhushkov SI, see de Meijere A (2000) 207:89–147
Kozhushkov SI, see de Meijere A (2000) 207:149–227
Kunkely H, see Vogler A (2001) 213:143–182
Kutzelnigg W, see Klopper W (1999) 203:21–42
Lemon III BL, see Crooks RM (2001) 212:81–135
Levitzki A (2000) Protein Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors as Therapeutic Agents. 211:1–15
Li X, see Paldus J (1999) 203:1–20
Linclau B, see Maul JJ (1999) 206:79–105
Maier FK, see Krause W (2000) 210:261–308
Martin SE, see Hergenrother PJ (2000) 211:131–167
McDonnell KA, see Imperiali B (1999) 202:1–38
Meijer EW, see Baars MWPL (2000) 210:131–182
Mikolajczyk M, see Drabowicz J (2000) 208:143–176
Möller M, see Sheiko SS (2001) 212:137–175
Müllen K, see Wiesler U-M (2001) 212:1–40
Müller H, see Klopper W (1999) 203:21–42
Noga J, see Klopper W (1999) 203:21–42
Ober D, see Hemseheidt T (2000) 209:175–206
Ostrowski PJ, see Maul JJ (1999) 206:79–105
Pak JJ, see Haley MM (1999) 201:81–129
Petrušová M, see Petruš L (2001) 215:15–41
Rigaut S, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
Ruiz J, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
Sartor V, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
Sato S, see Furukawa N (1999) 205:89–129
Sheiko SS, Möller M (2001) Hyperbranched Macromolecules: Soft Particles with Adjustable Shape and Capability to Persistent Motion. 212:137–175
Shogren-Knaak M, see Imperiali B (1999) 202:1–38
Sugihara Y, see Nakayama J (1999) 205:131–195
Sun L, see Crooks RM (2001) 212:81–135
Thiem J, see Werschkun B (2001) 215:293–325
Thutewohl M, see Waldmann H (2000) 211:117–130
Ublacker GA, see Maul JJ (1999) 206:79–105
Uemura S, see Nishibayashi Y (2000) 208:201–233
Valério C, see Astruc D (2000) 210:229–259
van Benthem RATM, see Muscat D (2001) 212:41–80
Vogtner S, see Klopper W (1999) 203:21–42
Wall T, see Wiesler U-M (2001) 212:1–40


Yeung LK, see Crooks RM (2001) 212:81–135

Zhao M, see Crooks RM (2001) 212:81–135